

---

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549**

**FORM 1-A**

**REGULATION A OFFERING CIRCULAR  
UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**

(Exact name of issuer as specified in its charter)

**Delaware**

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

**3802 Spectrum Blvd., Suite #112C  
Tampa, FL 33612**

**Telephone: (844) 722-6333**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number,  
including area code of issuer's principal executive office)

**Corporation Service Company  
2711 Centerville Road, Suite 400  
Wilmington, Delaware 19808**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number,  
including area code, of agent for service)

Copy to:

**Henry Nisser, Esq.  
Alzamend Neuro, Inc.  
100 Park Avenue, Suite 1658  
New York, New York 10017  
Telephone: (844) 722-6333**

---

**2836**

(Primary Standard Industrial  
Classification Code Number)

---

**81-1822909**

(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification Number)

The Offering Statement of which this Offering Circular forms a part shall only be qualified upon order of the Commission, unless a subsequent amendment is filed indicating the intention to become qualified by operation of the terms of Regulation A.

This Preliminary Offering Circular follows the offering circular format described in Part II of Form 1-A.

---

---

An Offering Statement pursuant to Regulation A relating to these securities has been filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, which we refer to as the Commission. Information contained in this Preliminary Offering Circular is subject to completion or amendment. These securities may not be sold nor may offers to buy be accepted before the Offering Statement filed with the Commission is qualified. This Preliminary Offering Circular shall not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy nor may there be any sales of these securities in any state in which such offer, solicitation or sale would be unlawful before registration or qualification under the laws of any such state. We may elect to satisfy our obligation to deliver a Final Offering Circular by sending you a notice within two business days after the completion of our sale to you that contains the URL where the Final Offering Circular or the offering statement in which such Final Offering Circular was filed may be obtained.

PRELIMINARY OFFERING CIRCULAR MARCH 12, 2020



ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.

NO MINIMUM OFFERING

\$45,000,000 MAXIMUM OFFERING

This is a public offering of securities of Alzamend Neuro, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”). We are offering (the “**Offering**”) a maximum of six million (6,000,000) shares (the “**Offered Shares**”) of our common stock, par value \$0.0001 (the “**Common Stock**”) at an offering price of \$7.50 per share (the “**Maximum Offering**”) on a “best-efforts, no minimum” basis.

We may conduct an initial closing (the “**Initial Closing**”) at any time (the “**Initial Closing Date**”) provided that the Offering Statement has been qualified by the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”). Thereafter, this Offering will continue until the earliest of (i) our decision to terminate the Offering, (ii) September 1, 2020, subject to extension for up to ninety (90) days in our sole and absolute discretion, or (iii) the date on which the Maximum Offering amount has been sold (such earliest date, the “**Termination Date**”). If, on the Initial Closing Date, we have sold less than the Maximum Offering, then we may hold one or more additional closings for additional sales (each an “**Additional Closing**”) until the Termination Date. The Company will consider various factors in determining the timing of any Additional Closings, including but not limited to the amount of proceeds received at the Initial Closing, any Additional Closings that have already been held, and indications of interest shown by any additional prospective investors.

From the date of qualification until the Initial Closing Date, and thereafter pending any Additional Closings on subsequent closing dates (“**Additional Closing Dates**,”) and with the Initial Closing Date, a “**Closing Date**”) the proceeds from the Offering will be kept in an escrow account. Upon the Initial Closing Date and upon each Additional Closing, if any, the proceeds therefrom will be distributed to the Company and the associated Offered Shares will be issued to the investors therein. If the Initial Closing never occurs, the proceeds from the Offering will be promptly returned to investors, without deduction or interest. SOS Back Office Solutions, LLC will serve as the escrow agent and will retain up to \$10,000 of interest accrued from funds deposited in the escrow account as partial compensation for serving as escrow agent. Checks should be made payable to “SOS Back Office Solutions, LLC FBO Alzamend Neuro, Inc.”

The minimum purchase requirement per investor is \$750, or one hundred (100) Offered Shares; however, we can waive the minimum purchase requirement on a case-by-case basis in our sole discretion. We expect to commence the sale of the Offered Shares as of the date on which the Offering Statement, of which this Offering Circular is a part, is qualified by the Commission.

There is no public market for our Common Stock. We intend to list our Common Stock on a national securities exchange, under the symbol **ALZA**, if available. Our Common Stock will not commence trading on a national securities exchange until a number of conditions are met, including that we have raised the minimum amount of offering proceeds necessary for us to meet the initial listing requirements of the national securities exchange selected.

---

We may engage a registered broker-dealer as the underwriter (the “**Underwriter**”) to offer the Offered Shares to prospective investors in the United States on a “best-efforts” basis, and our Underwriter will have the right to engage such other broker-dealers or agents as it determines, subject to our approval, to assist in such offering.

A maximum of \$45,000,000 will be offered worldwide. No sales of Offered Shares will be made anywhere in the world prior to the qualification of the Offering Statement by the Commission in the United States. All Offered Shares will be initially offered in all jurisdictions at the same U.S. dollar price that is set forth in this Offering Circular, except that: any underwriters who participate in the Offering, if any, will receive a selling concession from the Underwriter, as further described in “Underwriting.”

See “Description of Securities” for a description of our capital stock.

We are an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act (the “**JOBS Act**”) and, as such, may elect to comply with certain reduced reporting requirements for this Offering Circular and future filings after this offering.

**Investing in our Common Stock involves a high degree of risk. See “Risk Factors” for a discussion of certain risks that you should consider in connection with an investment in our Common Stock.**

	Number of Shares	Price to Public	Underwriting discounts and commissions (1)	Proceeds to issuer (2)
<b>Shares Offered by Company</b>				
Per share:	1	\$ 7.50	\$ TBD	\$ TBD
Underwriter’s Warrant:		TBD	\$	\$
Shares of Common Stock underlying underwriter’s warrant:		\$	\$	\$
Total Minimum:	N/A	\$ N/A	\$	\$
Total Maximum:	6,000,000	\$ 45,000,000	\$	\$

(1) We refer you to “Underwriting” beginning on page 74 of this Offering Circular for additional information regarding total underwriter compensation.

(2) Does not include expenses of the offering, including costs of Blue Sky compliance, fees to be paid to legal counsel and our independent auditor or filing fees. See “Underwriting.”

GENERALLY, NO SALE MAY BE MADE TO YOU IN THIS OFFERING IF THE AGGREGATE PURCHASE PRICE YOU PAY IS MORE THAN 10% OF THE GREATER OF YOUR ANNUAL INCOME OR YOUR NET WORTH. DIFFERENT RULES APPLY TO ACCREDITED INVESTORS AND NON-NATURAL PERSONS. BEFORE MAKING ANY REPRESENTATION THAT YOUR INVESTMENT DOES NOT EXCEED APPLICABLE THRESHOLDS, WE ENCOURAGE YOU TO REVIEW RULE 251(D)(2)(I)(C) OF REGULATION A. FOR GENERAL INFORMATION ON INVESTING, WE ENCOURAGE YOU TO REFER TO [WWW.INVESTOR.GOV](http://WWW.INVESTOR.GOV).

THE U.S. SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION DOES NOT PASS UPON THE MERITS OF OR GIVE ITS APPROVAL TO ANY SECURITIES OFFERED OR THE TERMS OF THE OFFERING, NOR DOES IT PASS UPON THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF ANY OFFERING CIRCULAR OR OTHER SOLICITATION MATERIALS. THESE SECURITIES ARE OFFERED PURSUANT TO AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE COMMISSION; HOWEVER, THE COMMISSION HAS NOT MADE AN INDEPENDENT DETERMINATION THAT THE SECURITIES OFFERED ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION.

The date of this Offering Circular is March 12, 2020.

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<b>Page</b>
CAUTIONARY STATEMENT REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	1
SUMMARY	2
RISK FACTORS	12
USE OF PROCEEDS	35
DILUTION	36
MANAGEMENT’S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS	38
OUR BUSINESS	48
DESCRIPTION OF PROPERTY	63
DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE	64
EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION	68
CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS	70
PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS	72
DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES	73
DIVIDEND POLICY	74
UNDERWRITING	74
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION ABOUT THE OFFERING	76
LEGAL MATTERS	77
EXPERTS	77
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION	78
INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	F-1

We are offering to sell, and seeking offers to buy, our securities only in jurisdictions where such offers and sales are permitted. You should rely only on the information contained in this Offering Circular. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with any information other than the information contained in this Offering Circular. The information contained in this Offering Circular is accurate only as of its date, regardless of the time of its delivery or of any sale or delivery of our securities. Neither the delivery of this Offering Circular nor any sale or delivery of our securities shall, under any circumstances, imply that there has been no change in our affairs since the date of this Offering Circular. This Offering Circular will be updated and made available for delivery to the extent required by the federal securities laws.

Unless otherwise indicated, data contained in this Offering Circular concerning the business of the Company are based on information from various public sources. Although we believe that these data are generally reliable, such information is inherently imprecise, and our estimates and expectations based on these data involve a number of assumptions and limitations. As a result, you are cautioned not to give undue weight to such data, estimates or expectations.

In this Offering Circular, unless the context indicates otherwise, references to “Alzamend,” “we,” the “Company,” “our,” and “us” refer to the activities of and the assets and liabilities of the business and operations of Alzamend Neuro, Inc.

---

## CAUTIONARY STATEMENT REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Some of the statements under “Summary,” “Risk Factors,” “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations,” “Our Business” and elsewhere in this Offering Circular constitute forward-looking statements. Such forward-looking statements include statements regarding, among others, (a) our expectations about possible business combinations, (b) our growth strategies, (c) our future financing plans, and (d) our anticipated needs for working capital. Forward-looking statements, which involve assumptions and describe our future plans, strategies, and expectations, are generally identifiable by use of the words “may,” “will,” “should,” “expect,” “anticipate,” “approximate,” “estimate,” “believe,” “intend,” “plan,” “budget,” “could,” “forecast,” “might,” “predict,” “shall” or “project,” or the negative of these words or other variations on these words or comparable terminology. This information may involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties, and other factors that may cause our actual results, performance, or achievements to be materially different from the future results, performance, or achievements expressed or implied by any forward-looking statements. These statements may be found in this Offering Circular.

Forward-looking statements are based on our current expectations and assumptions regarding our business, potential target businesses, the economy and other future conditions. Because forward-looking statements relate to the future, by their nature, they are subject to inherent uncertainties, risks, and changes in circumstances that are difficult to predict. Our actual results may differ materially from those contemplated by the forward-looking statements as a result of various factors, including, without limitation, changes in local, regional, national or global political, economic, business, competitive, market (supply and demand) and regulatory conditions and the following:

- Our ability to effectively execute our business plan;
- Our ability to manage our expansion, growth and operating expenses;
- Our ability to evaluate and measure our business, prospects and performance metrics;
- Our ability to compete and succeed in a highly competitive and evolving industry;
- Our ability to respond and adapt to changes in technology and customer behavior; and
- Our ability to protect our intellectual property and to develop, maintain and enhance a strong brand.

We caution you therefore that you should not rely on any of these forward-looking statements as statements of historical fact or as guarantees or assurances of future performance. All forward-looking statements speak only as of the date of this Offering Circular. We undertake no obligation to update any forward-looking statements or other information contained herein.

Information regarding market and industry statistics contained in this Offering Circular is included based on information available to us that we believe is accurate. It is generally based on academic and other publications that are not produced for purposes of securities offerings or economic analysis. Forecasts and other forward-looking information obtained from these sources are subject to the same qualifications and the additional uncertainties accompanying any estimates of future market size, revenue and market acceptance of products and services. Except as required by U.S. federal securities laws, we have no obligation to update forward-looking information to reflect actual results or changes in assumptions or other factors that could affect those statements.

## SUMMARY

This summary highlights selected information contained elsewhere in this Offering Circular. This summary is not complete and does not contain all the information that you should consider before deciding whether to invest in our Common Stock. You should carefully read the entire Offering Circular, including the risks associated with an investment in the company discussed in the “Risk Factors” section of this Offering Circular, before making an investment decision. Some of the statements in this Offering Circular are forward-looking statements. See the section entitled “Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements.”

### Company Information

We were formed on February 26, 2016, as Alzamend Neuro, Inc. under the laws of the State of Delaware. We were formed to acquire and commercialize patented intellectual property and know how to prevent, treat and cure the crippling and deadly Alzheimer’s disease (“**Alzheimer’s**” or “**AD**”). We have developed a unique approach for combating Alzheimer’s, namely through immunotherapy. Current drugs approved by the FDA for Alzheimer’s only address symptoms and provide no benefit to the impaired immune system caused by Alzheimer’s.

On May 29, 2018, we implemented a 1-for-4 Reverse Stock Split of our Common Stock. The Reverse Stock Split became effective on December 13, 2018. As a result of the Reverse Stock Split, every four (4) shares of our pre-Reverse Stock Split Common Stock were combined and reclassified into one share of the Common Stock. The number of shares of Common Stock subject to outstanding options and warrants were also reduced by a factor of four as of December 13, 2018 and their respective exercise prices were increased by a factor of four. All historical share and per-share amounts reflected throughout the consolidated financial statements and other financial information in this Offering Circular have been adjusted to reflect the Reverse Stock Split. Neither the authorized shares of capital stock nor the par value per share of the Common Stock was affected by the Reverse Stock Split.

Our mailing address is Alzamend Neuro, Inc., 3802 Spectrum Blvd., Suite #112C, Tampa, FL 33612 and our telephone number is (844) 722-6333. Our website addresses are [www.alzamend.com](http://www.alzamend.com) and [www.thealzamendstory.com](http://www.thealzamendstory.com). The information contained therein or accessible thereby shall not be deemed to be incorporated into this Offering Circular.

### Our Business

Alzamend Neuro is a company focused on the facilitation of bringing technologies to market which help with the treatment, prevention or cure of Alzheimer’s.

On May 1, 2016, we obtained a royalty-bearing, exclusive worldwide license from the University of South Florida Research Foundation, Inc. (the “**Licensor**”), to a mutant-peptide immunotherapy that is designed to be used both as a vaccine and prophylactic against Alzheimer’s. This treatment, known as AL002 (formerly known as CAO22W), has transitioned from early stage development to an extensive program of preclinical study and evaluation with an anticipated completion date at the end of June 2020. AL002 will require extensive clinical evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before it can provide us with any revenue. We plan to file an Investigational New Drug Application (“**IND**”) with the United States Food and Drug Administration (the “**FDA**”) with respect to AL002 in the second quarter of 2020 and prepare to conduct a Phase 1 Clinical Trial in the latter half of 2020.

On July 2, 2018, we obtained two royalty-bearing, exclusive worldwide licenses from the Licensor to a therapy known as AL001 (formerly known as LiProSal) to mitigate extreme agitation and forestall other deterioration as displayed by patients with up to moderate AD. AL001 is an ionic cocrystal of lithium and has been shown to exhibit improved nonclinical pharmacokinetics compared to current FDA-approved lithium products; it is also bioactive in many in vitro models of Alzheimer’s. AL001 is expected to provide clinicians with a major improvement over current lithium-based treatments and may also constitute a means of treating Alzheimer’s and other neurodegenerative diseases. Based on nonclinical data, AL001 co-crystal technology has the potential to improve the therapeutic index of lithium providing a greater bioavailability to the site of action (brain) in comparison to more traditional lithium dosage forms. Lithium has been marketed for over 35 years and human toxicology regarding lithium use has been well characterized, mitigating the potential regulatory burden for safety data. We submitted a pre-IND briefing package to the FDA in July 2019 that argued against any further preclinical safety studies. . Per the FDA response letter, we believe the proposed test parameters for AL001 appears reasonable to support a Phase 1 study, thereby allowing Alzamend to conduct human clinical trials. Post Phase III clinical trials and in order to obtain approval to commercialize AL001 via a New Drug Application (“**NDA**”), Alzamend has been asked to provide a scientific bridge to a listed drug to support the adequacy of the nonclinical program. Per the FDA, the adequacy of the nonclinical data will be a matter of review. If the adequacy of the nonclinical data is not sufficient for the FDA, Alzamend will then be required to conduct a clinical pharmacokinetics animal study (6-weeks study) of AL001 in order to be considered for FDA approval. We received feedback from the FDA regarding the pre-IND briefing package and have begun the process of finalizing the IND application and, while FDA approval is not guaranteed, we expect to receive approval to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects in the third quarter 2020. While the FDA has not given us any indication as to whether AL001 will receive Breakthrough Therapy designation or be permitted to use the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway, we believe that AL001 is an ideal candidate to receive both a Breakthrough Therapy designation as well as a section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for new drug approvals, enhancing the speed and reducing the regulatory burden of FDA review.

Technology  
AL001

The patented solution that we have licensed and will first move to commercialization is an ionic cocrystal of lithium for the treatment of Alzheimer's and a method of preparation for other pharmaceutical and industrial purposes. Lithium salts have a long history of human consumption beginning in the 1800's. In psychiatry, they have been used to treat mania and as a prophylactic for depression since the mid-20th century. Today, lithium salts are used as a mood stabilizer for the treatment of bipolar disorder. Although the FDA has approved no medications as safe and effective treatments for suicidality, lithium has proven to be the only drug that consistently reduces suicidality in patients with neuropsychiatric disorders. Despite these effective medicinal uses, current FDA-approved lithium pharmaceuticals (lithium carbonate and lithium citrate) are limited by a narrow therapeutic window that requires regular blood monitoring of plasma lithium levels and blood chemistry by a clinician to mitigate adverse events. Because conventional lithium salts (carbonate and citrate) are eliminated relatively quickly, multiple administrations throughout the day are required to safely reach therapeutic plasma concentrations. However, existing lithium drugs such as lithium chloride and lithium carbonate suffer from chronic toxicity, poor physicochemical properties and poor brain bioavailability. Because lithium is so effective at reducing manic episodes in patients with bipolar disorder, it is still used clinically despite its narrow therapeutic index. This has led researchers to begin to look for alternatives to lithium with similar bioactivities.

The inventors from the University of South Florida (the "University") have developed a new lithium cocrystal composition and method of preparation that allow for lower dosages to achieve therapeutic brain levels of lithium for psychiatric disorders, broadening lithium's therapeutic index. The compound offers improved physicochemical properties compared to existing forms of lithium, giving it the potential to be developed as an anti-suicidal drug or for use against mood disorders. The formulation method may also be used for commercial/industrial applications such as green chemistry, engineering low density porous materials, pesticides/herbicides, explosives/propellants, and electronic materials.

Recent evidence suggests that lithium may be efficacious for both the treatment and prevention of Alzheimer's. Unlike traditional medications which only address a single therapeutic target, lithium appears to be neuroprotective through several modes of action. For example, it exerts neuroprotective effects, in part, by increasing a brain-derived neurotrophic factor leading to restoration of learning and memory. Another neuroprotective mechanism of lithium is attenuation of the production of inflammatory cytokines like IL-6 and nitric oxide in activated microglia. Moreover, results from recent clinical studies suggest that lithium treatment may reduce dementia development while preserving cognitive function and reducing biomarkers associated with AD.

With this in mind, the team of inventors from the University have specifically designed, synthesized and characterized the novel ionic cocrystal of lithium (known as AL001). AL001 has been shown to exhibit improved nonclinical pharmacokinetics compared to current FDA-approved lithium products; it is also bioactive in many in vitro models of Alzheimer's. AL001 is expected to provide clinicians with a major improvement over current lithium-based treatments and may also constitute a means of treating Alzheimer's and other neurodegenerative diseases.

A product can be designated as a Breakthrough Therapy if it is intended to treat a serious condition and preliminary clinical evidence indicates that the drug may demonstrate substantial improvement over available therapy on a clinically significant endpoint(s). A drug that receives a Breakthrough Therapy designation is eligible for fast track designation features, intensive guidance on an efficient drug development program and FDA organizational commitment involving senior managers. We believe that AL001 is ideally positioned for a Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for new drug approvals. The Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway provides manufacturers with an opportunity to obtain FDA approval without performing all the work that's required by an NDA. Those drugs that qualify for the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway are an option for drugs with a new aspect related to indication, dosage form or regimen, strength, combination with other products, or other unique traits. If we receive approval through the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway AL001 would be eligible for 3-5 years of market exclusivity during which period AL001 would be protected from competitors. If we successfully acquire a Breakthrough Therapy designation and the Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for new drug approvals, we believe we can receive FDA approval for AL001 in four years.

AL001 will require extensive clinical evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before it or any successors could provide us with any revenue. As a result, if we do not successfully develop, achieve regulatory approval for and commercialize AL001, our long-term business plans will not be met, and we may be unable to generate the revenue we have forecast for many years, if at all. We do not anticipate that we will generate our maximum revenue for several years, or that we will achieve profitability for this therapeutic at least a few years after generating material revenue, if at all. If we are unable to generate revenue, we may not be able to pursue any expansion of our business or acquire additional intellectual property as we have planned, we will not become profitable with this therapeutic agent, and we may be unable to continue our operations.



The other patented solution that we have licensed to move to commercialization is AL002, a mutant-peptide immunotherapy that is designed to be used both as a vaccine and prophylactic against Alzheimer's. This therapy is intended to work by stimulating the body's own immune system to prevent the formation and breakdown of beta amyloids, which build up in the brain to form a "plaque," and subsequently block the neurological brain signals, ultimately leading to the symptoms and onset of Alzheimer's. Immunotherapy is the treatment of disease by inducing, enhancing, or suppressing an immune response. Immunotherapies that are designed to elicit or amplify an immune response are classified as activation immunotherapies, whereas immunotherapies that reduce or suppress an immune response are classified as suppression immunotherapies. We believe that strategies to strengthen the immune system in the elderly, who are most susceptible to the development of Alzheimer's, could greatly enhance the effectiveness of immune-based approaches towards Alzheimer's. Our novel immune-based methodology attempts to inhibit the natural process of immunological aging by restoring the balance of the immune system through immunomodulation.

Beta amyloid protein has been directly linked to Alzheimer's and the associated neurofibrillary tangles formation seen in Alzheimer's patients. Specifically, increased levels of extracellular plaques in the brain composed of amyloid beta peptide 1-42 are seen in Alzheimer's patients when compared to healthy people. In a healthy brain, protein fragments such as amyloid beta peptide 1-42 are broken down and eliminated. However, in Alzheimer's, the fragments accumulate to form hard, insoluble plaques. Attempts have been made to help inhibit plaque formation by reducing the amount of amyloid beta peptide 1-42 through vaccines that generate an immune response to the protein. The challenge has been that though effective in reducing the amount of the protein, the inflammatory response has been such that the intended benefits are not seen. These vaccines have used an adjuvant, or helper, to generate the necessary immune response and it is believed that this adjuvant triggers the unwanted surplus inflammation. We have licensed rights to a vaccine using autologous cells that does not require an adjuvant and therefore, we believe will trigger the immune response, which should help eliminate the amyloid beta peptide 1-42 without generating the excess inflammation and therefore, have a positive clinical effect. We believe that the vaccine, in addition to dealing with plaque formation, also ameliorates the impaired immune system that is thought to be the major issue in Alzheimer's patients.

Our data have demonstrated that these mutant-peptide sensitized dendritic cells ("DC") can act as a vaccine to generate a durable antibody response, as well as enhance the number of CD8+ T-cells and increase the lifespan of CD8+ cells (T and DCs cells), compared to control subjects. These studies will provide a further rationale and impetus for using this novel vaccine to determine potential efficacy in human clinical trials against Alzheimer's.

AL002 has been researched for more than ten (10) years and we are currently in the midst of completing its preclinical development and have begun both the pre-IND and IND application process to the FDA, which is managed by TAMM Net, Inc., an experienced and highly-regarded regulatory consultancy firm. In November 2018, we began a toxicological preclinical study for AL002 with Charles River Laboratories, Inc. ("CRL") in compliance with FDA requirements. Upon conclusion of this toxicological study, anticipated to occur in the second quarter of 2020, we expect to begin the process of finalizing the IND application process and move quickly forward to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects. AL002 will require extensive clinical evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before it and any successors could provide us with any revenue. As a result, if we do not successfully develop, achieve regulatory approval for and commercialize AL002, our long-term business plans will not be met, and we may be unable to generate the revenue we have forecast for AL002 for many years, if at all. We do not anticipate that we will generate our maximum revenue for several years, or that we will achieve profitability for this therapeutic at least a few years after generating material revenue, if at all. If we are unable to generate revenue, we may not be able to pursue any expansion of our business or acquire additional intellectual property as we have planned, we will not become profitable with this therapeutic agent, and we may be unable to continue our operations.

#### Market

Currently, Alzheimer's is the 6<sup>th</sup> leading cause of death in the U.S. and when extrapolated globally, the market for preventions, treatments, and cures of this crippling disease is massive. The Alzheimer's Association estimates that the cost of caring for people with Alzheimer's and other dementias will reach \$290 billion in 2019 and that by 2050, these costs may rise as high as \$1.1 trillion. Since 1990, life expectancy has increased by 6 years and the worldwide average continues to increase. With the increase in the mean age of the population in developed countries, the prevalence of deteriorating neurological diseases has also increased. According to the Alzheimer's Association, in the United States alone, 1 in 10 persons over the age of 65 have Alzheimer's, with more than 5.8 million Americans living with it. It is estimated that this number will increase to more than 14 million by 2050 if a cure is not found. Many Alzheimer's related associations believe the actual number of adults with AD may be as much as 5 times more or 30 million since current statistics do not take into account deaths from complications or from related diseases like pneumonia or heart attack. These death certificates only list the most immediate cause. The fastest growing age group in the United States is the "over 85" group within which 1 in 3 individuals have Alzheimer's. Women are 2½ times more likely to die from Alzheimer's than from cancer.

The rate of deaths related to Alzheimer's increased by 54.5 percent over 15 years, according to a report issued on May 27, 2017, by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. There were 93,541 deaths related to Alzheimer's in 2014, a rate of 25.4 deaths per 100,000 people, up from 44,536 deaths in 1999, a rate of 16.5 deaths per 100,000 people, according to the report. The disease currently affects an estimated 5.8 million people in the U.S., but that number is expected to rise dramatically in people over the age of 65 to 14 million in 2050. The researchers examined death certificate data from the National Vital Statistics System to reach their findings.

Every 65 seconds, someone in the United States develops AD. Of the 10 most fatal diseases in the United States, Alzheimer's is the only one with no cure, no known way of deceleration and no known means of prevention. Alzamend was formed to commercialize patented intellectual property in this space, by funding it from its present state through human clinical trials administered by the FDA and ultimately, if successful, potentially make it available to the global market.

### Business Plans

Our plan of operations is currently focused on the development of both our therapeutic candidates, which are at different stages in development. We have begun the process of finalizing the IND application for AL001 and expect to receive approval to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects in the third quarter 2020.

We expect to begin the process of finalizing the IND application process for AL002 and move quickly forward to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects during the latter half of 2020.

We engaged Emory University, located in Atlanta, Georgia, to develop and plan the Phase 1 Clinical Trial protocols, processes and plan. Dr. Ihab Hajjar, Neurologist at the Emory Clinic, has been selected to be the Lead Investigator for this set of clinical activities. We have also retained a division of the international Swiss manufacturer, Lonza, to develop the manufacturing protocols, processes and procedures. Lonza is the worldwide leader in producing immunological proprietary and contracted pharma solutions. We anticipate selecting Emory University as the host for the Phase 1 Clinical Trial, which will be led by Dr. Hajjar at the Emory Clinic.

In November 2018, we adopted a Charter for our Scientific Advisory Board ("SAB") and have announced the appointment of two SAB members, Dr. Thomas Wisniewski (Director of the NYU Pearl Barlow Center for Memory Evaluation and Treatment) and Dr. Eric McDade (Associate Director of the Dominantly Inherited Alzheimer Network Trials Unit (DIAN-TU)). The SAB members have clinical specializations, including extensive experience with AD and other neurological diseases. We intend to rely on these experts to help guide our therapies through the related scientific and manufacturing initiatives.

The continuation of our current plan of operations to completing our IND application and beginning the series of human clinical trials for each of our therapeutics requires us to promptly raise significant additional capital. If we are successful in raising capital, we believe that we will have sufficient cash resources to fund our operations.

Because our working capital requirements depend upon numerous factors, including the progress of our preclinical and clinical testing, timing and cost of obtaining regulatory approvals, changes in levels of resources that we devote to the development of manufacturing and marketing capabilities, competitive and technological advances, status of competitors, and our ability to establish collaborative arrangements with other organizations, we will require additional financing to fund future operations.

### *FDA consulting and active project planning management*

We have retained TAMM Net, Inc., an experienced and highly-regarded regulatory consultancy firm based in Georgia for project management. In this capacity, TAMM Net will lead, develop and manage our preclinical and clinical efforts, extending from the current status of each product candidate through the exit or commercialization of the technologies that we have licensed. We may retain an experienced Canadian and European Union consulting firm to commercialize these same technologies for these geographic markets.

### *Funding new AD research and acquisition of licenses to treat or cure AD*

We have committed to funding new research projects from Dr. Chuanhai Cao, the neuroscientist who developed AL002, and his medical team for at least the next three years.

We obtained two royalty-bearing, exclusive worldwide licenses from the Licensor, originally calls LisPro, now given the name of AL001 for regulatory and company confidentiality, a cocrystal biologic therapy intended to mitigate extreme agitation and forestall further deterioration of memory as displayed by patients with up to moderate AD effective as of July 2, 2018.

We are dedicated to acquiring and supporting new research to treat or cure AD and reserves the right to evaluate and pursue each opportunity as it may arise.

## Intellectual Property and Licensing Agreements

On May 1, 2016, we entered into the License Agreement with the Licensor pursuant to which the Licensor granted us a royalty bearing, exclusive worldwide license, limited to the field of Alzheimer's Immunotherapy and Diagnostics, under United States Patent No. 8,188,046, entitled "Amyloid Beta Peptides and Methods of Use" (AL002), filed April 7, 2009, and granted May 29, 2012.

In addition to royalty payments of 4% on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology, we were required to pay a license fee of \$100,000 on June 25, 2016, and December 31, 2016. As an additional licensing fee, the Licensor is entitled to receive that number of shares of our Common Stock equal to five percent (5%) of the sum of the total number of issued and outstanding shares plus any securities that are convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock, subject to adjustment for additional issuances until such time as we have received a total of \$5 million in cash in consideration for our equity securities. As of April 30, 2019 we had issued 3,601,809 shares to the Licensor in full satisfaction of this additional licensing fee. Minimum royalties are \$20,000 in 2022, \$40,000 in 2023 and \$50,000 in 2024 and every year thereafter, for the life of the agreement. Additionally, we are required to pay milestone payments on the due dates to Licensor for the license of the technology, as follows:

Payment	Due Date	Event
\$ 50,000	Upon IND application filing	Upon IND application filing
\$ 50,000	12 months from IND application filing date	Upon first dosing of patient in first Phase I Clinical Trial
\$ 175,000	12 months from first patient dosed in Phase I	Upon Completion of first Phase I Clinical Trial
\$ 500,000	24 months from completion of first Phase I Trial	Upon Completion of first Phase II Clinical Trial
\$ 1,000,000	12 months from completion of the first Phase II Clinical Trial	Upon first patient treated in a Phase III Clinical Trial
\$ 10,000,000	7 years from the effective date of the agreement	Upon FDA BLA Approval

The Licensor was also granted a preemptive right to acquire such shares or other equity securities that may be issued from time to time by us while Licensor remains the owner of any equity securities of our company. Further, if we issue equity securities at a price per share that is less than the price paid by investors in a transaction for aggregate consideration of at least \$5,000,000 (the "**Investment Price**"), then the number of shares owned by Licensee shall be increased upon such issuance. The amount of the increase shall be determined by multiplying the number of shares then owned by Licensor by a fraction; the numerator of which shall be equal to the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock, and the denominator of which shall be equal to the sum of (i) the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately prior to the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock plus (ii) the number of shares of Common Stock which the aggregate consideration for the total number of additional shares of Common Stock so issued would purchase at the Investment Price.

There are certain license fees and milestone payments required to be paid for the licensing of the AL001 technology, pursuant to the terms of two Standard Exclusive License Agreements with Sublicensing Terms, both dated June 21, 2018, (the "**AL001 License Agreements**") with the Licensor and the University. In addition, a royalty payment of 3% is required pursuant to License #18110 while License #18111 requires a royalty payment of 1.5% on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology. For the two AL001 licenses, in the aggregate, we paid initial license fees of \$200,000. As an additional licensing fee, the Licensor is entitled to receive that number of shares of Common Stock equal to three percent (3%) of the sum of the total number of issued and outstanding shares. As of April 30, 2019 we had issued 2,227,925 shares to the Licensor in full satisfaction of this additional licensing fee. Minimum royalties are \$25,000 in 2023, \$45,000 in 2024 and \$70,000 in 2025 and every year thereafter, for the life of the agreement. Additionally, we are required to pay milestone payments on the due dates to Licensor for the license of the technology, as follows:

<b>Payment</b>	<b>Due Date</b>	<b>Event</b>
\$ 50,000	November 1, 2019	Pre-IND meeting
\$ 65,000	6 months from IND filing date	IND application filing
\$ 190,000	12 months from IND filing date	Upon first dosing of patient in a clinical trial
\$ 500,000	12 months from first patient dosing	Upon Completion of first clinical trial
\$ 1,250,000	12 months from completion of the first Phase II clinical trial	Upon first patient treated in a Phase III Clinical Trial
\$ 10,000,000	8 years from the Effective Date of the Agreement	Upon FDA Approval

We have met the Pre-IND meeting milestone encompassing AL001. If we fail to meet a milestone by its specified date, the Licensor may terminate the License Agreement.

The license agreements above include certain termination provisions. The Licensor may terminate the agreements if the Licensee is delinquent on any report or payment, is not diligently developing and commercializing the licensed products and licensed processes, misses a milestone in advancing through clinical trials, is in breach of any provision, provides any false report, goes into bankruptcy, liquidation or proposes having a receiver control any assets, violates any laws or regulations of applicable government entities, ceases to carry on its business pertaining to the licensed patents, or brings a patent challenge against the Licensor.

#### **Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company**

We qualify as an “emerging growth company” as defined in the JOBS Act. As an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of specified reduced disclosure and other requirements that are otherwise applicable generally to public companies. These provisions include:

- only two years of audited financial statements in addition to any required unaudited interim financial statements with correspondingly reduced “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” disclosure;
- reduced disclosure about our executive compensation arrangements;
- no non-binding advisory votes on executive compensation or golden parachute arrangements; and
- exemption from the auditor attestation requirement in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting.

We may take advantage of these exemptions for up to five years or such earlier time that we are no longer an emerging growth company. We would cease to be an emerging growth company on the date that is the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenues of \$1 billion or more; (ii) the last day of our fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the date of the completion of our initial public offering; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in nonconvertible debt during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer under the rules of the Commission. We may choose to take advantage of some but not all of these exemptions. We have taken advantage of reduced reporting requirements in this Offering Circular. Accordingly, the information contained herein may be different from the information you receive from other public companies in which you hold stock. We have irrevocably elected to “opt out” of the exemption for the delayed adoption of certain accounting standards and will, therefore, be subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not emerging growth companies.

#### **Agreements with the Placement Agent**

We engaged Spartan Capital Securities, LLC (“Spartan,” or the “Placement Agent”) to act as a placement agent in a private placement that was terminated on November 15, 2019 (the “Private Offering”) in which we sold an aggregate of 1,756,726 Units, with each such Unit consisting of (i) one (1) share of Common Stock and (ii) one warrant to purchase one half (0.5) share of Common Stock, at a price of \$1.50 per Unit. We raised aggregate proceeds of \$2,635,089 and paid the Placement Agent an aggregate of \$420,263 in commission, fees and other payment for net proceeds of \$2,214,826.

In connection with the Private Offering, we entered into a Placement Agent Agreement and an Uplisting Agreement with the Placement Agent. Certain provisions of these agreements that are relevant to investors in the Offering are summarized below.

## Placement Agreement

Pursuant to the Placement Agreement effective as of June 10, 2019, we agreed with the Placement Agent to the cash compensation payable to the Placement Agent including, without limitation, the following:

### Placement Agent Compensation:

Upon the initial closing of the Private Offering we paid to the Placement Agent a non-refundable fee of Twenty-Five Thousand Dollars (\$25,000) and issued to the Placement Agent 500,000 shares of Common Stock.

Further, we issued to the Placement Agent 175,672 warrants to purchase a number of shares of Common Stock (the “**Placement Agent Warrants**”), a figure equal to ten percent (10%) of the number of shares of Common Stock sold in the Private Offering. The Placement Agent Warrants are exercisable for a period of five (5) years after their date of issuance, have an exercise price of \$1.75 per share and contain provisions pertaining to cashless exercise, standard anti-dilution protection and piggyback registration rights.

### Incurrence of Debt:

During the two (2) years following the final closing of Private Offering, we will not, without the prior written consent of the Placement Agent, incur indebtedness for borrowed money in an aggregate amount in excess of \$250,000.

### Future Sales of Securities and Conversion of the Series A Preferred Stock

During the period commencing on the final Closing and ending two years thereafter, provided that no Qualified Financing (as defined below) has occurred, if (i) we issue any shares of Common Stock or Common Stock equivalents at a per share price below \$1.50 absent the Placement Agent’s consent, or (ii) any holder of our Series A Preferred Stock elects to convert such shares into Common Stock, then upon any such issuance or conversion, as the case may be, the Placement Agent, its Affiliates and the investors in the Private Offering will be entitled to receive a significant number of additional shares (the “**Additional Shares**”) of Common Stock.

The number of shares held by the foregoing persons is approximately 8,500,000 (the “**Protected Shares**”). The number of Additional Shares issuable to these persons is based on the effective equivalent of weighted anti-dilution protection. Thus, if the 750,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock were fully converted, we would issue 15,000,000 shares to its holder(s) for a deemed issuance price of \$0.0004 per share (the par value of the Series A Preferred Stock multiplied by 4 taking into effect our 1 for 4 reverse split). The purchase price in the Private Offering would therefore be deemed to have been adjusted from \$1.50 to approximately \$1.2, resulting in an increase in the number of Protected Shares arrived at by multiplying 8,500,000 by the quotient obtained by dividing 1.5 by 1.2, or 1.25, or approximately 10,625,000. The number of Additional Shares is therefore approximately 2,000,000 shares, or approximately three percent (3%) of the total number of shares of our company issued and outstanding prior to this offering.

For purposes of the Placement Agreement, a “**Qualified Financing**” means the sale of equity securities by us in a single transaction or a series of related transactions registered under the Securities Act resulting in gross proceeds to us of not less than \$25,000,000.

In addition, during the period commencing on the final Closing and ending two years thereafter, we have agreed not to enter into any transactions with Milton C. Ault, our chairman of the board and principal stockholder or any Affiliate (as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act) thereof absent the Placement Agent’s consent. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Placement Agent has consented to our potential entry into an agreement whereby we would issue to an Affiliate of Mr. Ault 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock on terms substantially identical to those of the Private Offering.

### Failure to File Reports under the Securities Act

In the event that we do not file our annual or semiannual reports with the Commission on a timely basis, then the Placement Agent will have the right to designate a replacement for one of our members of the Board for a period of one (1) year following any such failure to file a periodic report on a timely basis, provided that neither Mr. Ault nor William B. Horne shall be subject to this provision.

### Employment Agreement with the Chief Executive Officer:

Upon or before the initial Closing of the Offering, the Company shall have entered into an employment agreement with Stephan Jackman having a term of at least two (2) years.

### Corporate Governance:

During the period commencing on the final Closing and ending at such time as the Common Stock is listed on a national securities exchange, the Placement Agent will have the right to designate one member of our Board.

Uplisting Agreement:

Finally, we agreed to enter into the Uplisting Agreement described immediately below.

**Uplisting Agreement**

Pursuant to the Uplisting Agreement effective as of June 10, 2019, we have agreed with the Placement Agent as follows:

We will engage the Placement Agent as an advisor (in such capacity, the “**Advisor**”) to, at our request, provide advisory services (the “**Services**”) to us in connection with a potential public offering (an “**IPO**”). We expect that any such Services rendered would consist principally of advising us on how to properly develop and implement strategies that would enhance our ability to successfully complete an IPO and in connection therewith obtain a listing on a national securities exchange, provided that we meet any such exchanges listing criteria at the applicable time as well as introduce us to appropriate underwriters that would lead or conduct any such IPO.

Pursuant to the Uplisting Agreement, we have issued, whether we request its assistance or not, the Advisor Five Hundred Thousand (500,000) shares of Common Stock as well as made a cash payment to the Advisor in the amount of \$475,000 and, in the event that we successfully consummate an IPO with an underwriter introduced to us by the Advisor, we will pay the Advisor a fee equal to two percent (2%) of the gross proceeds raised in the IPO.

If prior to a Qualified Financing we issue any shares of Common Stock or Common Stock equivalents at a per share price below \$1.50 absent the Advisor’s consent, then upon any such issuance, the Advisor will be entitled to receive a significant number of additional shares of Common Stock (this provision can, like its counterpart in the Placement Agreement described above, thus be deemed the functional equivalent of weighted average anti-dilution protection).

In the event that we engage in what the Uplisting Agreement refers to as an “Alternative Transaction” during the term of such agreement or for a period of two (2) years thereafter, we will be obligated to pay to the Advisor a fee in cash equal to three percent (3%) of the amount of the consideration paid or received by us and/or our stockholders in the Alternative Transaction. For purposes of the Uplisting Agreement, an “**Alternative Transaction**” means a business combination, including, any merger, acquisition or sale of stock or assets (whether we are the acquiring or the acquired entity), joint venture, strategic alliance or other similar transaction, and shall extend to any subsidiary of ours on the same terms as will be applicable to us.

The term of the Uplisting Agreement will be two (2) years, subject to either party’s right to terminate it in the event that the other party to the agreement breaches it in any material way.

## THE OFFERING

<b>Issuer:</b>	Alzamend Neuro, Inc.
<b>Securities offered by the Company:</b>	Up to 6,000,000 shares of our Common Stock, par value \$0.0001 (“ <b>Common Stock</b> ”) at an offering price of \$7.50 per share (the “ <b>Offered Shares</b> ”).
<b>Number of shares of Common Stock outstanding before the offering:</b>	63,662,858 shares (1)
<b>Number of shares of Common Stock to be outstanding after the offering:</b>	69,662,858 shares, if the Maximum Offering is sold.
<b>Price per share:</b>	\$7.50
<b>Maximum Offering:</b>	6,000,000 shares at \$7.50 per share, or \$45,000,000
<b>Proposed U.S. listing:</b>	We intend to apply to list our Common Stock on a national securities exchange under the symbol “ <b>ALZA</b> .” Our Common Stock will not commence trading on any national securities exchange until all of the following conditions are met: (i) at least the Initial Closing has occurred and we have raised the minimum amount of offering proceeds necessary for us to meet the initial listing requirements of the Company’s selected national securities exchange; (ii) the Offering will have been terminated; and (iii) we have filed a post-qualification amendment to the Offering Statement and a registration statement on Form 8-A (“ <b>Form 8-A</b> ”) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the “ <b>Exchange Act</b> ”), and such post-qualification amendment is qualified by the Commission and the Form 8-A has become effective. Pursuant to applicable rules under Regulation A, the Form 8-A will not become effective until the SEC qualifies the post-qualification amendment. We intend to file the post-qualification amendment and request its qualification immediately prior to the termination of the Offering in order that the Form 8-A may become effective as soon as practicable. As a result, you will experience a delay between the closing of your purchase of shares of our Common Stock and the commencement of exchange trading of our Common Stock.
<b>Worldwide Offering:</b>	<p>We may engage a registered broker-dealer as the underwriter (the “<b>Underwriter</b>”) to offer the Offered Shares to prospective investors worldwide on a “best-efforts” basis, and our Underwriter will have the right to engage such other broker-dealers or agents to assist in such offering.</p> <p>A maximum of \$45,000,000 of Offered Shares will be offered worldwide. No sales of Offered Shares will be made anywhere in the world prior to the qualification of the Offering Statement by the Commission in the United States. All Offered Shares will be initially offered everywhere in the world at the same U.S. dollar price that is set forth in this Offering Circular, except that any shares sold to securities dealers may be sold at a discount from the public offering price, as further described in “<b>Underwriting</b>.”</p>
<b>Use of proceeds:</b>	If we sell all of the Offered Shares, we estimate that our net proceeds (after underwriting discount and commissions and our estimated other offering expenses) will be approximately \$40,500,000. We intend to use the net proceeds to us from this offering to move AL001 and AL002 forward with the remaining funds to be used for AD research, purchase of additional licensing of AD-oriented intellectual property and general corporate purposes, including working capital, raising new capital, marketing activities and general and administrative matters. See the section titled “Use of Proceeds” for additional information.

**Risk factors:**

**Investing in our Common Stock involves a high degree of risk. See “Risk Factors.”**

- (1) The number of shares of our Common Stock to be outstanding after this offering is based on 63,662,858 shares of Common Stock outstanding as of February 29, 2020 and excludes:
- 15,000,000 shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion of the Series A Preferred Stock;
  - 20,000,000 shares of Common Stock reserved for issuance under 2016 Stock Incentive Plan (the “**Plan**”);
  - 6,652,035 shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of warrants exercisable at an average price of \$2.82 per share.



## RISK FACTORS

An investment in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. You should carefully consider the risks described below, together with all of the other information included in this Offering Circular, before making an investment decision. If any of the following risks actually occurs, our business, financial condition or results of operations could suffer. In that case, the trading price of our shares of common stock could decline and you may lose all or part of your investment. See “Cautionary Note Regarding Forward Looking Statements” above for a discussion of forward-looking statements and the significance of such statements in the context of this Offering Circular.

### **Risks Related to Our Company**

#### **We have virtually no operating history on which to judge our business prospects and management.**

We were incorporated on February 26, 2016 and commenced operations shortly thereafter. Accordingly, we have a very limited operating history upon which to base an evaluation of our business and prospects. Operating results for future periods are subject to numerous uncertainties and we cannot assure you that we will achieve or sustain profitability. Our prospects must be considered in light of the risks encountered by companies in the early stage of development, particularly companies in new and rapidly evolving markets. Future operating results will depend upon many factors, including our success in attracting and retaining motivated and qualified personnel, our ability to establish short term credit lines or obtain financing from other sources, our ability to develop and market new products, control costs, and general economic conditions. We cannot assure you that we will successfully address any of these contingencies.

#### **We are significantly influenced by our officers, directors and entities affiliated with them.**

In the aggregate, beneficial ownership of the shares of Common Stock by management and affiliated parties represents approximately 53.35% of our fully diluted shares of Common Stock. These stockholders, if acting together, will be able to significantly influence all matters requiring approval by stockholders, including the election of directors and the approval of mergers or other business combinations transactions.

#### **Certain provisions of our Certificate of Incorporation allow concentration of voting power in one stockholder, which may, among other things, delay or frustrate the removal of incumbent directors or a takeover attempt, even if such events may be beneficial to our stockholders.**

Provisions of our Certificate of Incorporation may delay or frustrate the removal of incumbent directors and may prevent or delay a merger, tender offer or proxy contest involving our company that is not approved by our Board, even if those events may be perceived to be in the best interests of our stockholders. Moreover, an affiliate of our company owns the Series A Preferred Stock. Such shares have significant voting power, among other terms. Further, we may designate and issue separate classes of preferred stock that may entitle their holder(s) to exercise significant control over us. Consequently, anyone to whom or which these shares are or were issued could have sufficient voting power to significantly influence if not control the outcome of all corporate matters submitted to the vote of our common stockholders. Those matters could include the election of directors, changes in the size and composition of the Board, and mergers and other business combinations involving us. In addition, through any such person's control of the Board and voting power, the affiliate may be able to control certain decisions, including decisions regarding the qualification and appointment of officers, dividend policy, access to capital (including borrowing from third-party lenders and the issuance of additional debt or equity securities), and the acquisition or disposition of assets by us. In addition, the concentration of voting power in the hands of an affiliate could have the effect of delaying or preventing a change in control of our company, even if the change in control could benefit our stockholders and may adversely affect the future market price of our Common Stock should a trading market therefor develop.

#### **Certain provisions of our Certificate of Incorporation, Bylaws and Delaware law make it more difficult for a third party to acquire us and make a takeover more difficult to complete, even if such a transaction were in the stockholders' interest.**

Our Certificate of Incorporation, Bylaws and certain provisions of Delaware State law could have the effect of making it more difficult or more expensive for a third party to acquire, or discouraging a third party from attempting to acquire, control of our company, even when these attempts may be in the best interests of our stockholders. For example, we are governed by Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law. In general, Section 203 prohibits a public Delaware corporation from engaging in a “business combination” with an “interested stockholder” for a period of three years after the date of the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder, unless the business combination is approved in a prescribed manner. A “business combination” includes mergers, asset sales or other transactions resulting in a financial benefit to the stockholder. An “interested stockholder” is a person who, together with affiliates and associates, owns, or within three years did own, 15% or more of the corporation's outstanding voting stock. These provisions may have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of our company.

#### **Limitations of Director Liability and Indemnification of Directors and Officers and Employees.**

Our Certificate of Incorporation limits the liability of directors to the maximum extent permitted by Delaware law. Delaware law provides that directors of a corporation will not be personally liable for monetary damages for breach of their fiduciary duties as directors, except for liability for any:

- breach of their duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;
- act or omission not in good faith or that involves intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- unlawful payments of dividends or unlawful stock repurchases or redemptions as provided in Section 174 of the Delaware General Corporation Law; or
- transaction from which the directors derived an improper personal benefit.

These limitations of liability do not apply to liabilities arising under the federal or state securities laws and do not affect the availability of equitable remedies such as injunctive relief or rescission.

Our Bylaws provide that we will indemnify our directors, officers and employees to the fullest extent permitted by law. Our Bylaws also provide that we are obligated to advance expenses incurred by a director or officer in advance of the final disposition of any action or proceeding. We believe that these provisions are necessary to attract and retain qualified persons as directors and officers.

The limitation of liability in our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws may discourage stockholders from bringing a lawsuit against directors for breach of their fiduciary duties. They may also reduce the likelihood of derivative litigation against directors and officers, even though an action, if successful, might provide a benefit to us and our stockholders. Our results of operations and financial condition may be harmed to the extent we pay the costs of settlement and damage awards against directors and officers pursuant to these indemnification provisions.

#### **We will need but may be unable to obtain funding on satisfactory terms, which could dilute our stockholders or impose burdensome financial restrictions on our business.**

We have relied upon cash from financing activities and in the future, we hope to rely on revenues generated from operations to fund all of the cash requirements of our activities. However, it is extremely unlikely that we will be able to generate any significant cash from our operating activities in the foreseeable future. Future financings may not be available on a timely basis, in sufficient amounts or on terms acceptable to us, if at all. Any debt financing or other financing of securities senior to the Common Stock will likely include financial and other covenants that will restrict our flexibility. Any failure to comply with these covenants would have a material adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations because we could lose our existing sources of funding and impair our ability to secure new sources of funding. However, there can be no assurance that we will be able to generate any investor interest in our securities. Further, any financing that we may wish to enter into may be subject to the consent of Spartan Capital Securities, LLC (“**Spartan**”) and there can be no assurance that Spartan will provide its consent to any such financing. If we do not obtain additional financing, our business will never commence, in which case you would likely lose the entirety of your investment in us.

#### **Our financial situation creates substantial doubt whether we will continue as a going concern**

Since inception, we have generated no revenues and have incurred losses. As of April 30, 2019, we had cash of \$42,606 and an accumulated deficit of \$7,375,633. Since our inception, we have incurred recurring losses and reported losses for the year ended April 30, 2019 of \$4,862,496. The report of our independent registered public accounting firm on our April 30, 2019, financial statements includes a going concern explanatory paragraph which states that there is substantial doubt regarding our ability to continue as a going concern. There can be no assurances that we will be able to achieve a level of revenues adequate to generate sufficient cash flow from operations or obtain additional financing through private placements, public offerings and/or bank financing necessary to support our working capital requirements. To the extent that funds generated from any private placements, public offerings and/or bank financing are insufficient, we will have to raise additional working capital. No assurance can be given that additional financing will be available, or if available, will be offered to us on acceptable terms. If adequate working capital is not available we may be forced to cease or curtail our operations, which would cause investors to lose their entire investment.

**We are at an early stage of development and currently have no source of revenue and may never become profitable.**

We are a preclinical development stage biopharmaceutical company. Currently, we have no products approved for commercial sale and, to date, we have not generated any revenue. Our ability to generate revenue depends heavily on:

- demonstration in future clinical trials that AL001 and AL002 are safe and effective;
- our ability to seek and obtain regulatory approvals, including with respect to the indications we are seeking;
- successful manufacture and commercialization of AL001 and AL002; and
- market acceptance of AL001 and AL002.

We only have two product candidates, AL001 and AL002, which are in the IND stage and preclinical stage of development, respectively, and will require extensive clinical evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before it and any successors could provide us with any revenue. As a result, if we do not successfully develop, achieve regulatory approval and commercialize AL001 or AL002, we will be unable to generate any revenue for many years, if at all. We do not anticipate that we will generate revenue for a few years, at the earliest, or that we will achieve profitability for at least several years after generating material revenue, if at all. If we are unable to generate revenue, we will not become profitable, and we may be unable to continue our operations.

**We must effectively manage the growth of our operations, or our company will suffer**

Our initiation of operations has resulted in significantly higher operating expenses, which the net proceeds from this Offering, if any, are intended in part to offset. Expansion of our operations, to include the development of AL001 and AL002, may also cause a significant demand on our management, finances and other resources. Our ability to manage the anticipated future growth, should it occur, will depend upon a significant expansion of our accounting and other internal management systems and the implementation and subsequent improvement of a variety of systems, procedures and controls. In addition, we intend to expand the Board and the SAB. There can be no assurance that significant problems in these areas will not occur. Any failure to expand these areas and implement and improve AL001 or AL002 or our procedures and controls in an efficient manner at a pace consistent with our business could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. There can be no assurance that our attempts to expand our marketing, sales, manufacturing and customer support efforts will be successful or will result in additional sales or profitability in any future period.

**We received a subpoena from the Commission in the investigation now known as “In the Matter of DPW Holdings, Inc.,” the consequences of which are unknown.**

We received a subpoena from the Commission that stated that the staff of the Commission is conducting an investigation now known as “*In the Matter of DPW Holdings, Inc.*,” and that the subpoena was issued as part of an investigation as to whether DPW Holdings, Inc. and certain of its officers, directors, employees, partners, subsidiaries and/or affiliates, and/or other persons or entities, directly or indirectly, violated certain provisions of the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, in connection with the offer and sale of its securities. Although the order states that the Commission may have information relating to such alleged violations, the subpoena expressly provides that the inquiry is not to be construed as an indication by the Commission or its staff that any violations of the federal securities laws have occurred. We have produced documents in response to the subpoena. The Commission may in the future require us to produce additional documents or information, or seek testimony from other members of our management team. We have received a notice from the Commission stating that its staff is investigating whether the Commission should issue an order pursuant to Rule 258 of Regulation A of the Securities Act that would temporarily suspend the Company’s Regulation A exemption.

We are unaware of the scope or timing of the Commissioner’s investigation. As a result, we do not know how the Commission’s investigation is proceeding or when the investigation will be concluded. We also are unable to predict what action, if any, might be taken in the future by the Commission or its staff as a result of the matters that are the subject to its investigation or what impact, if any, the cost of continuing to respond to subpoenas might have on our financial position, results of operations, or cash flows. We have not established any provision for losses in respect of this matter. In addition, complying with any such future requests by the Commission for documents or testimony could distract the time and attention of our officers and directors or divert our resources away from ongoing business matters. This investigation could result in significant legal expenses, the diversion of management’s attention from our business, damage to our business and reputation, and could subject us to a wide range of remedies, including an enforcement action by the Commission. There can be no assurance that any final resolution of this and any similar matters will not have a material adverse effect on our financial condition or results of operations.

### Risks Related to Our Product Candidates

**We have both operational and financial milestones that must be met to maintain the licensing rights to our current technology and IP from the USF Research Foundations, Inc. or those rights may be terminated.**

There are certain initial license fees and milestone payments required to be paid by us to the Licensor pursuant to the terms of the License Agreements.

The License Agreement requires us to pay royalty payments of four percent (4%) on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology for AL002 while the License Agreements for AL001 require that we pay combined royalty payments of four and one-half percent (4.5%) on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology. We have already paid an initial license fee of \$200,000 for AL002 and an initial license fee of \$200,000 for AL001. As an additional licensing fee for the license of AL002, the Licensor received 3,601,809 shares of Common Stock. As an additional licensing fee for the license of the AL001 technologies, the Licensor received 2,227,925 shares of Common Stock equal to three percent (3%) of the sum of the total number of such shares issued and outstanding plus any securities that are convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock until we have received a total of \$5 million in cash in consideration for our equity securities. Minimum royalties for AL001 are \$25,000 in 2023, \$45,000 in 2024 and \$70,000 in 2025 and every year thereafter, for the life of the agreement. Minimum royalties for AL002 are \$20,000 in 2022, \$40,000 in 2023 and \$50,000 in 2024 and every year thereafter, for the life of the agreement. Additionally, we are required to pay milestone payments on the due dates to the Licensor for the license of the AL001 technologies and for the AL002 technology, as follows:

#### **AL001:**

<b>Payment</b>	<b>Due Date</b>	<b>Event</b>
\$ 50,000	November 1, 2019	Pre-IND meeting
\$ 65,000	6 months from IND filing date	IND application filing
\$ 190,000	12 months from IND filing date	Upon first dosing of patient in a clinical trial
\$ 500,000	12 months from first patient dosing	Upon Completion of first clinical trial
\$ 1,250,000	12 months from completion of the first Phase II clinical trial	Upon first patient treated in a Phase III Clinical Trial
\$ 10,000,000	8 years from the Effective Date of the Agreement	Upon FDA Approval

#### **AL002:**

<b>Payment</b>	<b>Due Date</b>	<b>Event</b>
\$ 50,000	Upon IND application filing	Upon IND application filing
\$ 50,000	12 months from IND application filing date	Upon first dosing of patient in first Phase I Clinical Trial
\$ 175,000	12 months from first patient dosed in Phase I	Upon Completion of first Phase I Clinical Trial
\$ 500,000	24 months from completion of first Phase I Trial	Upon Completion of first Phase II Clinical Trial
\$ 1,000,000	12 months from completion of the first Phase II Clinical Trial	Upon first patient treated in a Phase III Clinical Trial
\$ 10,000,000	7 years from the effective date of the agreement	Upon FDA BLA Approval

We have met the Pre-IND meeting milestone encompassing AL001. If we fail to meet a milestone by the specified date, the Licensor may terminate the respective License Agreement. If the Licensor were to terminate either License Agreement for whatever reason, it would materially and adversely affect our business, financial position and future prospects and you would likely lose the entirety of your investment in us.

The Licensor was also granted a preemptive right to acquire such shares or other equity securities that may be issued from time to time by us while the Licensor remains the owner of any of our equity securities. Further, if we issue equity securities at a price per share that is less than the price paid by investors in a transaction for aggregate consideration of at least \$5,000,000 then the number of shares owned by the Licensor shall be increased upon such issuance. The amount of the increase shall be determined by multiplying the number of shares then owned by Licensor by a fraction, the numerator of which shall be equal to the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock, and the denominator of which shall be equal to the sum of (i) the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately prior to the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock plus (ii) the number of shares of Common Stock which the aggregate consideration for the total number of additional shares of Common Stock so issued would purchase at the Investment Price.

**If we fail to comply with our obligations in the agreements under which we license intellectual property and other rights from third parties or otherwise experience disruptions to our business relationships with the Licensor, we could lose license rights that are important to our business.**

We are a party to these License Agreements with the Licensor and expect to enter into additional license agreements in the future. The existing License Agreements impose, and we expect that future license agreements will impose, various diligence, milestone payment, royalty and other obligations on us. If we fail to comply with our obligations under these agreements, or we are subject to a bankruptcy, we may be required to make certain payments to the Licensor, we may lose the exclusivity of our license, or the Licensor may have the right to terminate the license, in which event we would not be able to develop or market products covered by the license. The Licensor or any future licensor may take any of these actions, including terminating the License upon 60 days' notice for any reason. Additionally, the milestone and other payments associated with these licenses will make it less profitable for us to develop our product candidates. If the Licensor were to terminate the License Agreement for whatever reason, it would materially and adversely affect our business, financial position and future prospects and you would likely lose the entirety of your investment in us.

In some cases, patent prosecution of our licensed technology is controlled solely by the Licensor. If the Licensor fails to obtain and maintain patent or other protection for the proprietary intellectual property we license, we could lose our rights to the intellectual property or our exclusivity with respect to those rights, and our competitors could market competing products using the intellectual property. In certain cases, we control the prosecution of patents resulting from licensed technology. In the event that we breach any of our obligations related to such prosecution, we may incur significant liability to the Licensor. Licensing of intellectual property is of critical importance to our business and involves complex legal, business and scientific issues. Disputes may arise regarding intellectual property subject to a licensing agreement, including but not limited to:

- the scope of rights granted under the license agreement and other interpretation-related issues;
- the extent to which our technology and processes infringe on intellectual property of the licensor that is not subject to the licensing agreement;
- the sublicensing of patent and other rights;
- our diligence obligations under each of the license agreements and what activities satisfy those diligence obligations;
- the ownership of inventions and know-how resulting from the joint creation or use of intellectual property by our licensors and us and our collaborators; and
- the priority of invention of patented technology.

If disputes over intellectual property and other rights that we have licensed prevent or impair our ability to maintain our current licensing arrangements on acceptable terms, we may be unable to successfully develop and commercialize the affected product candidates.

**We are substantially dependent on the success of our product candidates, which may not receive regulatory approval or be successfully commercialized.**

In the future, we hope to submit AL001 and AL002 and, potentially, other product candidates, for regulatory approval. Currently, however, neither AL001 nor AL002 has been submitted for regulatory approval, which would be required before we seek to initiate commercial distribution. To date, we have invested nearly all of our resources in establishing our company and the acquisition of the intellectual property of our product candidates, AL001 and AL002. Our near-term prospects, including our ability to finance our company and to enter into strategic collaborations and, ultimately, to generate revenue, are directly dependent upon the successful development and commercialization of AL001 or AL002.

The development and commercial success of our product will depend on a number of factors, including, without limitation, the following:

- our timely initiation and successful completion of preclinical studies and clinical trials for AL001 or AL002;

- our demonstration to the satisfaction of the FDA, the EMA and other applicable regulatory authorities the safety and efficacy of AL001 or AL002 as well as to obtain regulatory and marketing approval for AL001 or AL002 in the U.S., Europe and elsewhere;
- our continued compliance with all clinical and regulatory requirements applicable to AL001 and AL002;
- our maintenance of an acceptable safety profile of AL001 and AL002 following regulatory approval;
- competition with other treatments;
- our creation, maintenance and protection of our intellectual property portfolio, including patents and trade secrets, and regulatory exclusivity for AL001 and AL002;
- the effectiveness of our and our eventual partners' marketing, sales and distribution strategy and operations;
- the ability of our third-party manufacturers to manufacture supplies of our product and product candidates and to develop, validate and maintain commercially viable manufacturing processes;
- our ability to launch commercial sales of AL002 or AL002 following regulatory approval, whether alone or in collaboration with others; and
- the acceptance of AL001 or AL002 by physicians, health care payers, patients and the medical community.

Many of these factors are beyond our control, and we cannot assure you that we will ever be able to generate sufficient revenue or any revenue from the sale of AL001 or AL002. Our failure in any of the above factors, or in successfully commercializing AL001 or AL002 on a timely basis, could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition, and the value of your investment could substantially decline.

**AL001 and AL002 may not achieve market acceptance, which would limit our ability to generate revenue from new products.**

Even if we develop AL001 or AL002 and gain regulatory approvals for either or both, unless physicians and patients accept our product candidates, we may not be able to sell them and generate significant revenues. We cannot assure you that AL001, AL002, or any other potential products will achieve market acceptance and revenue if and when they obtain the requisite regulatory approvals. Market acceptance of any product candidate depends on a number of factors, including but not limited to:

- the indication and warnings approved by regulatory authorities in the product label;
- continued demonstration of efficacy and safety in commercial use;
- physicians' willingness to prescribe the product;
- reimbursement from third-party payors such as government health care systems and insurance companies;
- the price of the product;
- the nature of any post-approval risk management plans mandated by regulatory authorities;
- competition; and
- the effectiveness of marketing and distribution support.

Any failure by AL001 or AL002 to achieve market acceptance or commercial success could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**Problems in our manufacturing process, failure to comply with manufacturing regulations or unexpected increases in our manufacturing costs could harm our business, results of operations and financial condition.**

We are responsible for the manufacture and supply of AL001 and AL002, independently of each other. The manufacturing of AL001 and AL002 necessitates compliance with the FDA, EU and international current Good Manufacturing Practice ("cGMP") and other international regulatory requirements. Although we may in the future contract with third parties for a certain amount of the manufacturing of AL001 and AL002, the responsibility to obtain market authorization for AL001 and AL002 remains with us. As such, even if we could potentially have a claim against one or more third parties, we are legally liable for any noncompliance related to AL001 and AL002 and we expect to retain legal responsibility for any future product candidates as well.

If we are unable to manufacture, or contract to manufacture, AL001 and AL002 in accordance with regulatory specifications, or if there are disruptions in the manufacturing process due to damage, loss or failure to pass regulatory inspections of manufacturing facilities, we may not be able to meet the demand for our products or supply sufficient product for use in clinical trials, and this may harm our ability to commercialize AL001 and AL002 on a timely or cost-competitive basis, or preclude us from doing so at all.

Before we can begin commercial manufacture of AL001, AL002, or any other product candidate that we may develop in the future, we must obtain FDA regulatory approval for the product, which requires a successful FDA inspection of our manufacturing facilities, processes and quality systems in addition to other product-related approvals. Even if we successfully pass an FDA Pre-Approval Inspection of any manufacturing facilities we may establish or contract with, our pharmaceutical facilities would be continuously subject to inspection by the FDA and foreign regulatory authorities, even after product approval. Due to the complexity of the processes that we anticipate will eventually be used to manufacture AL001 and AL002, we may be unable to pass federal, state or international regulatory inspections in a cost-effective manner, whether initially or at any time thereafter. If we are unable to comply with manufacturing regulations, we may be subject to fines, unanticipated compliance expenses, recall or seizure of any approved products, or legal actions such as injunctions or criminal or civil prosecution. These possible sanctions could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. See also “Risks Related to Development and Regulatory Approval of Our Product.” The regulatory approval process is uncertain, requires us to utilize significant resources, and may prevent us or our commercial partners from obtaining approvals for the commercialization of some or all of our drug candidates.”

**We expect to face substantial competition, with other entities possibly discovering, developing or commercializing products before, or more successfully than, we do.**

The development and commercialization of new therapy and vaccine products is highly competitive. We will face competition with respect to AL001, AL002 and any other product candidates that we may seek to develop or commercialize in the future, from major pharmaceutical companies, specialty pharmaceutical companies and biotechnology companies worldwide. In addition to existing therapeutic treatments for the indications we are targeting with AL001 and AL002, we also face potential competition from other drug candidates in development by other companies. Our potential competitors include large health care companies, such as Celgene Corporation, Merck & Co., Inc., Sanofi S.A., Eli Lilly and Company, Bayer AG, Novartis AG and Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH. We also know of several smaller early stage companies that are developing products for use in our segment of the market. Some of the potential competitive compounds referred to above are being developed by large, well-financed and established pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies or have been partnered with such companies, which may give them development, regulatory and marketing advantages over our products.

Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products that are safer, more effective, have fewer or less severe side effects, are more convenient or are less expensive than any products that we may develop. Our competitors also may obtain FDA or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for ours, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position before we are able to enter the market. In addition, our ability to compete may be affected in many cases by insurers or other third-party payers seeking to encourage the use of generic products. If AL001 or AL002 achieves marketing approval, we expect that it will be priced at a significant premium over competing generic products.

Some of the companies against which we are competing or against which we may compete in the future have significantly greater financial resources and expertise in research and development, manufacturing, preclinical testing, conducting clinical trials, obtaining regulatory approvals and marketing approved products than we do. Mergers and acquisitions in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries may result in even more resources being concentrated among a smaller number of our competitors. Smaller and other early stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies. These third parties compete with us in recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel, establishing clinical trial sites and patient registration for clinical trials, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs.

If we are unable to compete successfully, we may be unable to grow and sustain our revenue, which could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**Serious adverse events or other safety risks could require us to abandon development and preclude, delay or limit approval of AL001 or AL002, or limit the scope of any approved label or market acceptance.**

If AL001, AL002 or any other product candidate that we may develop in the future, prior to or after any approval for commercial sale, causes serious or unexpected side effects, or become associated with other safety risks such as misuse, abuse or diversion, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could result, including, without limitation, that:

- regulatory authorities may interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials;

- regulatory authorities may deny regulatory approval of AL001 or AL002;
- regulatory authorities may require certain labeling statements, such as warnings or contraindications or limitations on the indications for use, or impose restrictions on distribution in the form of a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy “REMS”), in connection with approval, if any;
- regulatory authorities may withdraw their approval, require more onerous labeling statements or impose a more restrictive REMS of any product that is approved;
- we may be required to change the way the product is administered or conduct additional clinical trials;
- any relationships that we may be able to form in the future with any commercial partners may suffer;
- we could be sued and held liable for harm caused to patients; and
- our reputation may suffer.

We may voluntarily suspend or terminate our clinical trials if at any time we believe that they present an unacceptable risk to participants or if preliminary data demonstrate that either AL002 or AL001 is unlikely to receive regulatory approval or is unlikely to be successfully commercialized. In addition, regulatory agencies, an Institutional Review Board (an “**IRB**”), or data safety monitoring boards may at any time recommend the temporary or permanent discontinuation of our clinical trials or request that we cease using investigators in the clinical trials if they believe that the clinical trials are not being conducted in accordance with applicable regulatory requirements, or that they present an unacceptable safety risk to participants. If we elect or are forced to suspend or terminate a clinical trial of AL001, AL002 or any other product candidate that we may in the future develop, the commercial prospects for that product will be harmed and our ability to generate product revenue from that product may be delayed or eliminated. Furthermore, any of these events could prevent us or our partners from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the affected product and could substantially increase the costs of commercializing AL001 or AL002 and materially impair our ability to generate revenue from the commercialization of AL001 or AL002 either by us or by any commercial partners that we may develop a relationship with in the future and could have a material adverse effect on our reputation, business, results of operations and financial condition.

**If we fail to obtain and sustain an adequate level of reimbursement for our products by third-party payers, sales and profitability will be adversely affected.**

The course of medical treatment for human patients is, and will continue to be, expensive. We expect that most patients and their families will not be capable of paying for our products themselves. Accordingly, it is unlikely that there will be a commercially viable market for AL001 or AL002 without reimbursement from third-party payers. Additionally, even if there is a commercially viable market, if the level of third-party reimbursement is insufficient from the patient’s perspective, our revenue and gross margins will be materially and adversely affected.

A current trend in the U.S. health care industry, as well as in other countries around the world, is toward cost containment. Large public and private payers, managed care organizations, group purchasing organizations and similar organizations are exerting increasing influence on decisions regarding the use of, and reimbursement levels for, particular treatments. Third-party payers, such as government programs, including Medicare in the U.S., and private health care insurers, carefully review and have increasingly been challenging the coverage of, and prices charged for, medical products and services. Many third-party payers limit coverage of or reimbursement for newly-approved health care products. Reimbursement rates from private health insurance companies vary depending on the company, the insurance plan and other factors. Cost-control initiatives could decrease the price we or our partners establish for products, which could result in lower product revenue and profitability.

Reimbursement systems in international markets vary significantly by country and by region, and reimbursement approvals must be obtained on a country-by-country basis. Our eventual partners may elect to reduce the price of our products in order to increase the likelihood of obtaining reimbursement approvals. In many countries, products cannot be commercially launched until reimbursement is approved and the negotiation process in some countries can exceed 12 months. In addition, pricing and reimbursement decisions in certain countries can be affected by decisions taken in other countries, which can lead to mandatory price reductions and/or additional reimbursement restrictions across a number of other countries, which may adversely affect our sales and profitability. If countries set prices that are not sufficient to allow us or our partners to generate a profit, our partners may refuse to launch the product in such countries or withdraw the product from the market, which would adversely affect our sales and profitability and could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**We may not be successful in our efforts to expand our pipeline of product candidates.**

One element of our strategy is to expand our pipeline of pharmaceuticals based on our technology and advance these product candidates through clinical development for the treatment of a variety of indications. Although our research and development efforts to date have resulted in a number of development programs based on our technology, we may not ultimately be able to develop product candidates that are safe and effective. Even if we are successful in continuing to expand our pipeline, the potential product candidates that we identify may not be suitable for clinical development, including as a result of being shown to have harmful side effects or other characteristics that indicate that they are unlikely to receive marketing approval and achieve market acceptance. In addition, if we attempt to apply our technology to develop product candidates for indications outside of Alzheimer’s, we will need to conduct genotoxicity and immunotoxicity trials, in which the results are presently uncertain. If we do not successfully develop and commercialize product candidates based upon our technological approach, we will not be able to obtain product revenue in future periods, which would make it unlikely that we would ever achieve profitability.



**Product recalls or inventory losses caused by unforeseen events, cold chain interruption and testing difficulties may adversely affect our operating results and financial condition.**

AL001 and AL002, individually, will be manufactured and distributed, if ever, using technically complex processes requiring specialized facilities, highly specific raw materials and other production constraints. The complexity of these processes, as well as the strict company and government standards for the manufacture of our products, will subject us to production risks. While product batches released for use in clinical trials or for commercialization undergo sample testing, some defects may only be identified following product release. In addition, process deviations or unanticipated effects of approved process changes may result in these intermediate products not complying with stability requirements or specifications. Most of our products must be stored and transported at temperatures within a certain range, which is known as “strict cold chain” storage and transportation. If these environmental conditions deviate from the norm, our products’ remaining shelf lives could be impaired or their efficacy and safety could become adversely affected, making them no longer suitable for use. The occurrence or suspected occurrence of production and distribution difficulties can lead to lost inventories, and in some cases product recalls, with consequential reputational damage and the risk of product liability. The investigation and remediation of any identified problems can cause production delays, substantial expense, lost sales and delays of new product launches, any of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

#### **Risks Related to Development and Regulatory Approval of Our Product**

**There is a high rate of failure for drug candidates proceeding through clinical trials.**

Generally speaking, there is a high rate of failure for drug candidates proceeding through clinical trials. We may suffer significant setbacks in our clinical trials similar to the experience of a number of other companies in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries, even after receiving promising results in earlier trials. Further, even if we view the results of a clinical trial to be positive, the FDA or other regulatory authorities may disagree with our interpretation of the data. For instance, any such differing interpretation could cause the FDA to require additional trials. In the event that:

- we obtain negative results from the AL001 or AL002 from a clinical trial;
- the FDA places a clinical hold on our clinical trials due to potential chemistry, manufacturing and controls issues or other hurdles, or
- the FDA does not approve our NDA for AL001 or our Biologics License Application (“BLA”) for AL002, then:
  - o we may not be able to generate sufficient revenue or obtain financing to continue our operations;
  - o our ability to execute our current business plan will be materially impaired;
  - o our reputation in the industry and in the investment community would likely be significantly damaged; and
  - o the price of the Common Stock, assuming a trading market has then developed therefor, would likely decrease significantly.

Any of these results could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations or financial condition.

**Clinical trials for AL001 or AL002 can be expensive, time consuming, uncertain and susceptible to change, delay or termination.**

Clinical trials are expensive, time consuming and difficult to design and implement. The result of a clinical trial may be undesirable and can result in a clinical trial cancellation or the need for re-evaluation and supplementation. Even if the results of our clinical trials are favorable, the clinical trials for AL001 or AL002 are expected to continue for a few years and may even take significantly longer to complete. In addition, we, the FDA, an IRB, or other regulatory authority, including in the U.S., EU and elsewhere, may suspend, delay or terminate our clinical trials at any time, for various reasons, including, without limitation:

- lack of effectiveness of AL001 or AL002 during clinical trials;
- discovery of serious or unexpected toxicities or side effects experienced by trial participants or other safety issues;

- slower than expected rates of subject recruitment and enrollment rates in clinical trials;
- difficulty in retaining subjects who have initiated a clinical trial but may have withdrawn due to adverse side effects from the therapy, insufficient efficacy, fatigue with the clinical trial process or for any other reason;
- delays or inability in manufacturing or obtaining sufficient quantities of materials for use in clinical trials due to manufacturing or regulatory constraints;
- inadequacy of or changes in our manufacturing process or product formulation;
- delays in obtaining regulatory authorization to commence a trial, including experiencing “clinical holds” or delays requiring suspension or termination of a trial by a regulatory agency, such as the FDA, before or after a trial is commenced;
- changes in applicable regulatory policies and regulations;
- delays or failure in reaching agreement on acceptable terms in clinical trial contracts or protocols with prospective clinical trial sites;
- delay or failure to supply product for use in clinical trials which conforms to regulatory specification;
- unfavorable results from ongoing pre-clinical studies and clinical trials;
- failure of any contract research organizations (“CROs”) that we may partner with in the future, or other third-party contractors, to comply with all contractual requirements or to perform their services in a timely or acceptable manner;
- failure by us, our employees, any CROs or their employees to comply with all applicable FDA or other regulatory requirements relating to the conduct of clinical trials;
- scheduling conflicts with participating clinicians and clinical institutions;
- failure to design appropriate clinical trial protocols; or
- regulatory concerns with pharmaceutical products generally and the potential for abuse.

The occurrence of any of the foregoing could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**The regulatory approval process is uncertain, requires us to utilize significant resources, and may prevent us or our commercial partners from obtaining approvals for the commercialization of AL001 or AL002.**

The research, testing, manufacturing, labeling, approval, sale, marketing and testing of AL001 and AL002 are and will be subject to extensive regulation by regulatory authorities in the U.S., Europe and elsewhere, and regulatory requirements applicable to our product differ from country to country. Neither we nor any commercial partner is permitted to market any of our current or future product candidates in the U.S. until we receive approval from the FDA of either an NDA or BLA, respectively. Obtaining approval of an NDA or a BLA can be an uncertain process that requires us to utilize significant resources. Furthermore, regulatory authorities possess broad discretion regarding processing time and usually request additional information and raise questions which have to be answered. There is considerable uncertainty regarding the times at which products may be approved. In addition, failure to comply with FDA and other applicable U.S. and foreign regulatory requirements may subject us to administrative or judicially imposed sanctions, including: warning letters, civil and criminal penalties, injunctions, withdrawal of approved products from the market, product seizure or detention, product recalls, total or partial suspension of production, and refusal to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications.

The process required by the FDA and most foreign regulatory authorities before human health care pharmaceuticals may be marketed generally involves nonclinical laboratory and, in some cases, animal tests; submission of an IND, which must become effective before clinical trials may begin; adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials to establish the safety and efficacy of the proposed drug for its intended use or uses; pre-approval inspection of manufacturing facilities and clinical trial sites; and FDA approval of a NDA or BLA, which must occur before a drug can be marketed or sold.

Regulatory approval of an NDA or BLA, or any supplement thereof, is not guaranteed, and the approval process requires us to utilize significant resources, could take several years, and is subject to the substantial discretion of the FDA. Despite the time and expense exerted, failure can occur at any stage, and we could encounter problems that cause us to abandon or have to repeat or perform additional studies. If our product or any of our future product candidates fails to demonstrate safety and efficacy in our studies, or for any other reason does not gain regulatory approval, our business and results of operations will be materially and adversely harmed.

In addition, separate regulatory approvals are required in order to market any product in many jurisdictions, including the U.S., the European Economic Area, which consists of the 28 Member States of the European Union plus Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein, and many others. Approval procedures vary among countries and can involve additional studies and testing, and the time required to obtain approval may differ from that required to obtain FDA approval. Studies conducted in one country may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other countries. Approval by the FDA does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other countries, and approval by one or more foreign regulatory authorities does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other foreign countries or by the FDA. However, a failure or delay in obtaining regulatory approval in one country may have a negative effect on the regulatory process in others. The foreign regulatory approval process may include all of the risks associated with obtaining FDA approval. We may be unable to file for regulatory approvals or do so on a timely basis and, even if we are able to, we may not receive necessary approvals to commercialize our products in any market. Any of these results could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**Even if we receive regulatory approval for any of our future product candidates, we will be subject to ongoing FDA and other regulatory body obligations and continued regulatory review, which may result in significant additional expense. Additionally, our product candidates, if approved, will be subject to labeling and manufacturing requirements and could be subject to other restrictions. Failure to comply with these regulatory requirements or the occurrence of unanticipated problems with our products could result in significant penalties.**

Any regulatory approvals that we or any of our collaborators receive for AL001, AL002 or any future product candidate may be subject to conditions of approval or limitations on the approved indicated uses for which the product may be marketed or may contain requirements for potentially costly surveillance to monitor the safety and efficacy of the product candidate. In addition, AL001, AL002 and any of our future product candidates, if approved by the FDA or other regulatory bodies, will be subject to extensive and ongoing regulatory requirements regarding the manufacturing processes, labeling, packaging, distribution, adverse event reporting, storage, advertising, promotion and recordkeeping. These requirements will include submissions of safety and other post-marketing information and reports, registration, as well as continued compliance with cGMP, Good Laboratory Practice and Good Clinical Practice for any studies that we conduct post-approval. Later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product, including adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or with our third-party manufacturers or manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may result in, among other things:

- restrictions on the marketing or manufacturing of the product, withdrawal of the product from the market, or voluntary or mandatory product recalls;
- fines, warning letters or holds on target studies;
- refusal by the FDA or other applicable regulatory body to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications filed by us or our strategic collaborators, or suspension or revocation of product license approvals;
- product seizure or detention, or refusal to permit the import or export of products; and
- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

The policies of the FDA and other regulatory bodies may change, and additional government regulations may be promulgated that could prevent, limit or delay regulatory approval of AL001 or AL002. We cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative action, either in the U.S. or elsewhere. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing approval that we may have obtained, and we may not achieve or sustain profitability, which would materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**AL001 or AL002 and any of our future product candidates, if approved, may cause or contribute to adverse medical events that we are required to report to the FDA and regulatory authorities in other countries and, if we fail to do so, we could be subject to sanctions that would materially harm our business.**

If we are successful in commercializing AL001, AL002 or any of our future product candidates, regulations promulgated by the FDA and by the regulatory authorities in other countries require that we report certain information about adverse medical events if those products may have caused or contributed to those adverse events. The timing of our obligation to report would be triggered by the date we become aware of the adverse event as well as the nature of the event. We may fail to report adverse events we become aware of within the prescribed timeframe. We may also fail to appreciate that we have become aware of a reportable adverse event, especially if it is not reported to us as an adverse event or if it is an adverse event that is unexpected or removed in time from the use of our products. If we fail to comply with our reporting obligations, the FDA and regulatory authorities in other countries could take action including criminal prosecution, the imposition of civil monetary penalties, seizure of our products, or delay in approval or clearance of future products, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**Legislative or regulatory reforms with respect to products may make it more difficult and costly for us to obtain regulatory clearance or approval of AL001, AL002 or any of our future product candidates and to produce, market, and distribute our products after clearance or approval is obtained.**

From time to time, legislation is drafted and introduced in the U.S. Congress and lawmaking bodies in other countries that could significantly change the statutory provisions governing the testing, regulatory clearance or approval, manufacture, and marketing of regulated products. In addition, FDA regulations and guidance are often revised or reinterpreted by the FDA in ways that may significantly affect our business and our products. Similar changes in regulations can occur in other countries. Any new regulations or revisions or reinterpretations of existing regulations in the U.S. or in other countries may impose additional costs or lengthen review times of AL001, AL002 and any of our future product candidates. We cannot determine what effect changes in regulations, statutes, legal interpretation or policies, when and if promulgated, enacted or adopted may have on our business in the future. Such changes could, among other things, require:

- requests for additional endpoints or studies;
- changes to manufacturing methods;
- recall, replacement, or discontinuance of certain products; and
- additional record keeping.

Each of these would likely entail substantial time and cost and could have a material adverse effect on our ability to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates. In addition, delays in receipt of or failure to receive regulatory clearances or approvals for any future products could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**Our ability to market AL001, AL002 and any future product candidates in the U.S., if approved, will be limited to use for the treatment of the indications for which they are approved, and if we want to expand the indications for which we may market AL001, AL002 and any future product candidates, we will need to obtain additional FDA approvals, which may not be granted.**

We plan to seek full FDA approval in the U.S. for AL001 and AL002 to treat Alzheimer's. If AL001 or AL002 is approved, the FDA will restrict our ability to market or advertise it for the treatment of indications other than the one for which it is approved, which would limit its use. If we decide to attempt to develop, promote and commercialize new treatment indications and protocols for AL001, AL002 and product candidates in the future, we could not predict when, or if, we would ever receive the approvals required to do so. We would be required to conduct additional studies to support such applications for additional use, which would consume additional resources and may produce results that do not result in FDA approvals. If we do not obtain additional FDA approvals, our ability to expand our business in the U.S. would be adversely affected, which could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**The anticipated development of a REMS for AL001 or AL002 could cause delays in the approval process and would add additional layers of regulatory requirements that could impact our ability to commercialize AL001 and AL002 in the U.S. and reduce their market potential.**

As a condition of approval of an NDA or a BLA, the FDA may require a REMS to ensure that the benefits of the drug outweigh the potential risks. REMS elements can include medication guides, communication plans for health care professionals, and elements to assure safe use ("ETASU"). ETASU's can include, but are not limited to, special training or certification for prescribing or dispensing, dispensing only under certain circumstances, special monitoring, and the use of patient registries. Moreover, product approval may require substantial post-approval testing and surveillance to monitor the drug's safety or efficacy. We may be required to adopt a REMS for AL001 or AL002 to ensure that the benefits outweigh the risks of abuse, misuse, diversion and other potential safety concerns. Even if the risk of abuse, misuse or diversion are not as high as for some other products, there can be no assurance that the FDA will approve a manageable REMS for AL001 or AL002, which could create material and significant limits on our ability to successfully commercialize AL001 and AL002 in the U.S. Delays in the REMS approval process could result in delays in the NDA or BLA approval process, respectively. In addition, as part of the REMS, the FDA could require significant restrictions, such as restrictions on the prescription, distribution and patient use of the product, which could significantly impact our ability to effectively commercialize AL001 or AL002, and dramatically reduce their market potential thereby adversely impacting our business, financial condition and results of operations. Even if initial REMS are not highly restrictive, if, after launch, AL001, AL002 and other drug candidates were to become subject to significant abuse/non-medical use or diversion from licit channels, this could lead to negative regulatory consequences, including a more restrictive REMS, which could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**If we are found in violation of “fraud and abuse” laws, we may be required to pay a penalty and/or be suspended from participation in government-run health care programs, which may adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.**

If we are successful in obtaining marketing approval for our products in the U.S. and elsewhere, we will be subject to various health care “fraud and abuse” laws, including anti-kickback laws, false claims laws and other laws intended to reduce fraud and abuse in government-run health care programs, which could affect us, particularly upon successful commercialization of our products in the U.S. For example, the Medicare and Medicaid Patient Protection Act of 1987 (generally known as the federal “**Anti-Kickback Statute**”) makes it illegal for any person, including a prescription drug manufacturer (or a party acting on its behalf), to knowingly and willfully solicit, receive, offer or pay any remuneration that is intended to induce the referral of business, including the purchase, order or prescription of a particular drug for which payment may be made under a U.S. health care program such as Medicare or Medicaid. Under U.S. federal government regulations, some arrangements, known as safe harbors, are deemed not to violate the Anti-Kickback Statute. Although we intend to seek to structure our business arrangements in compliance with all applicable requirements, these laws are broadly written, and it is often difficult to determine precisely how the law will be applied in specific circumstances. Accordingly, it is possible that our practices may be challenged under the Anti-Kickback Statute and similar laws in other jurisdictions.

Further, false claims laws prohibit anyone from knowingly and willfully presenting or causing to be presented for payment to third-party payers, including government payers, reimbursement claims for drugs or services that are false or fraudulent, claims for items or services that were not provided as claimed, or claims for medically unnecessary items or services. Cases have been brought under false claims laws alleging that off-label promotion of pharmaceutical products or the payment of kickbacks to pharmaceutical providers has resulted in the submission of false claims to governmental health care programs. Under laws such as the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 in the U.S., we are prohibited from knowingly and willfully executing a scheme to defraud any health care benefit program, including private payers, or knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement in connection with the delivery of or payment for health care benefits, items or services. Violations of fraud and abuse laws may be punishable by criminal and/or civil sanctions, including fines and/or exclusion or suspension from government-run health care programs such as Medicare and Medicaid and debarment from contracting with the U.S. and other governments. In addition, in the U.S. individuals have the ability to bring actions on behalf of the government under the federal False Claims Act as well as under state false claims laws.

Many states in the U.S. have adopted laws similar to the Anti-Kickback Statute, some of which apply to the referral of patients for health care services reimbursed by any source, not just governmental payers. In addition, California and a few other states in the U.S. have passed laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the April 2003 Office of Inspector General Compliance Program Guidance for Pharmaceutical Manufacturers and/or the Pharmaceutical Research and Manufacturers of America Code on Interactions with Health Care Professionals. In addition, several states impose other marketing restrictions or require pharmaceutical companies to make marketing or price disclosures to the state. There are ambiguities as to what is required to comply with these state requirements and if we fail to comply with an applicable state law requirement we could be subject to penalties.

We have yet to receive definitive guidance on the application of fraud and abuse laws to our business. Law enforcement authorities are increasingly focused on enforcing these laws, and it is possible that some of our future practices may be challenged under these laws. While we believe we will be able to structure our business arrangements to comply with these laws, it is possible that the government could in the future allege violations of, or convict us of violating, these laws. If we are found in violation of one of these laws, we could be required to pay a penalty and could be suspended or excluded from participation in certain government-run health care programs, and our business, results of operations and financial condition may be materially and adversely affected.

#### **Risks Related to Our Business and Industry**

**If we fail to attract and keep senior management and key scientific personnel, we may be unable to successfully develop AL001, AL002 or any future product candidates, conduct our in-licensing and development efforts or commercialize AL001, AL002 or any of our future product candidates.**

Our future growth and success depend in part on our continued ability to attract, retain and motivate highly qualified management and scientific personnel. We are highly dependent upon our senior management, particularly Stephan Jackman, our Chief Executive Officer, Kenneth Cragun, our Chief Financial Officer as well as on our consultant, Dr. Chuanhai Cao, the neuroscientist who developed AL002, and Dr. Roland “Doug” Shytle, one of the investors of AL001 and other members of our senior management team. The loss of services of any of these individuals could delay or prevent the successful development of our current or future product pipeline, completion of our planned development efforts or the commercialization of AL001 or AL002. It is possible that current or former employees of ours could put forward claims for an alleged right to our patents and demand compensation therefor. If one or more of the key personnel were to leave us and engage in competing operations, our business, results of operations and financial condition could be materially and adversely affected. To date, none of our key personnel has left us without a suitable replacement having been identified prior to such departure or, to our knowledge, engaged in competing operations, nor has any departure of key personnel had any material effect on our company.

**We may have trouble hiring additional qualified personnel.**

As we expand our development and commercial activities, we will need to hire additional personnel and could experience difficulties attracting and retaining qualified employees. Competition for qualified personnel in the biopharmaceutical field is intense due to the limited number of individuals who possess the skills and experience required by that industry. We may not be able to attract and retain quality personnel on favorable terms, or at all. In addition, to the extent we hire personnel from competitors, we may be subject to allegations that such personnel have been improperly solicited or that they have divulged proprietary or other confidential information, or that their former employers own their research output. Any of these difficulties could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**We are subject to risks relating to legal proceedings.**

We are subject to various claims and legal actions arising in the ordinary course of our business. Any such litigation could be very costly and could distract our management from focusing on operating our business. The existence of any such litigation could harm our business, results of operations and financial condition. Results of actual and potential litigation are inherently uncertain. An unfavorable result in a legal proceeding could adversely affect our reputation, financial condition and operating results.

**If product liability lawsuits are brought against us, we will incur substantial liabilities and may be required to limit the commercialization of AL001 or AL002.**

We and our partners face potential product liability exposure related to the testing of AL001 or AL002 in clinical trials. We will face exposure to claims by an even greater number of persons if we begin to market and distribute our products commercially in the U.S. and elsewhere, including those relating to misuse of AL001 or AL002. Now, and in the future, an individual may bring a liability claim against us alleging that AL001 or AL002 caused an injury. While we intend to take what we believe to be appropriate precautions, we may be unable to avoid significant liability if any product liability lawsuit is brought against us. If we cannot successfully defend ourselves against product liability claims, we will incur substantial liabilities. Even if we successfully defend any such action, the costs associated with such defense could prove exorbitant. Regardless of merit or eventual outcome, liability claims may result in:

- decreased demand for AL001 or AL002, if such product candidate is approved;
- injury to our reputation;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants;
- costs of related litigation;
- substantial monetary awards to patients and others;
- increased cost of liability insurance;
- loss of revenue; and
- our inability to successfully commercialize our products.

Furthermore, in the future there may be a need to expand the scope of our insurance coverage, which could result in significantly increased costs or the inability to obtain sufficient insurance coverage. Any of these occurrences could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**Failure of our information technology systems could significantly disrupt the operation of our business.**

Our ability to execute our business plan and to comply with regulatory requirements with respect to data control and data integrity depends, in part, on the continued and uninterrupted performance of our information technology systems (“**IT systems**”). These systems are vulnerable to damage from a variety of sources, including telecommunications or network failures, malicious human acts and natural disasters. Moreover, despite network security and back-up measures, some of our servers are potentially vulnerable to physical or electronic break-ins, computer viruses and similar disruptive problems. Despite the precautionary measures we have taken to prevent unanticipated problems that could affect our IT systems, there are no assurances that electronic break-ins, computer viruses and similar disruptive problems, and/or sustained or repeated system failures or problems arising during the upgrade of any of our IT systems that interrupt our ability to generate and maintain data will not occur. The occurrence of any of the foregoing with respect to our IT systems could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations or financial condition.

**We will be subject to the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act and other anti-corruption laws, as well as export control laws, customs laws, sanctions laws and other laws governing our anticipated operations. If we fail to comply with these laws, we could be subject to civil or criminal penalties, other remedial measures, and legal expenses, which could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.**

Our operations, if initiated, will be subject to certain anti-corruption laws, including the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (“FCPA”), and other anti-corruption laws that apply in countries where we do business. The FCPA and other anti-corruption laws generally prohibit us and our employees and intermediaries from bribing, being bribed or making other prohibited payments to government officials or other persons to obtain or retain business or gain some other business advantage. We and our commercial partners operate in a number of jurisdictions that pose a high risk of potential FCPA violations and we participate in collaborations and relationships with third parties whose actions could potentially subject us to liability under the FCPA or local anti-corruption laws. In addition, we cannot predict the nature, scope or effect of future regulatory requirements to which our international operations might be subject or the manner in which existing laws might be administered or interpreted.

We also anticipate becoming subject to other laws and regulations governing our international operations, including regulations administered in the U.S. and in the EU, including applicable export control regulations, economic sanctions on countries and persons, customs requirements and currency exchange regulations (collectively, “**Trade Control Laws**”).

There can be no assurance that we will be completely effective in ensuring our compliance with all applicable anticorruption laws, including the FCPA or other legal requirements, such as Trade Control Laws. Any investigation of potential violations of the FCPA, other anti-corruption laws or Trade Control Laws by U.S., EU or other authorities could have an adverse impact on our reputation, our business, results of operations and financial condition. Furthermore, should we be found not to be in compliance with the FCPA, other anti-corruption laws or Trade Control Laws, we may be subject to criminal and civil penalties, disgorgement and other sanctions and remedial measures, as well as the accompanying legal expenses, any of which could have a material adverse effect on our reputation and liquidity, as well as on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

#### **Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property**

**We may be forced to litigate to enforce or defend our intellectual property rights, or the intellectual property rights of our licensors.**

We may be forced to litigate to enforce or defend our intellectual property rights against infringement and unauthorized use by competitors. In so doing, we may place our intellectual property at risk of being invalidated, held unenforceable, or narrowed in scope. Further, an adverse result in any litigation or defense proceedings may place pending applications at risk of non-issuance. In addition, if any licensor fails to enforce or defend its intellectual property rights, this may adversely affect our ability to develop and commercialize AL001 or AL002 as well as our ability to prevent competitors from making, using, and selling competing products. Any such litigation could be very costly and could distract our management from focusing on operating our business. The existence or outcome of any such litigation could harm our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential and proprietary information could be compromised by disclosure during this type of litigation. In addition, there could be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments. If securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have a material adverse effect on the price of our Common Stock, should a market therefor ever develop.

**We may be unable to adequately prevent disclosure of trade secrets and other proprietary information.**

We rely on trade secrets to protect our proprietary know-how and technological advances, especially where we do not believe patent protection is appropriate or obtainable. However, trade secrets are difficult to protect. We rely in part on confidentiality agreements with our employees, consultants, outside scientific collaborators, sponsored researchers and other advisors to protect our trade secrets and other proprietary information. These agreements may not effectively prevent disclosure of confidential information and may not provide an adequate remedy in the event of unauthorized disclosure of confidential information. In addition, others may independently discover our trade secrets and proprietary information. Costly and time-consuming litigation could be necessary to enforce and determine the scope of our proprietary rights. Failure to obtain or maintain trade secret protection or failure to adequately protect our intellectual property could enable competitors to develop generic products or use our proprietary information to develop other products that compete with our products or cause additional, material adverse effects upon our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The transfer of technology and knowledge to contract manufacturers pursuant to the production of our products also creates a risk of uncontrolled distribution and copying of concepts, methods and processes relating to our products. Such uncontrolled distribution and copying could have a material adverse effect on the value of our products if used for the production of competing drugs or otherwise used commercially without our obtaining financial compensation.

**We may become subject to third parties' claims alleging infringement of patents and proprietary rights or seeking to invalidate our patents or proprietary rights, which would be costly, time-consuming and, if successfully asserted against us, delay or prevent the development and commercialization of AL001 or AL002.**

There has been substantial litigation and other proceedings regarding patent and other intellectual property rights in the pharmaceutical industry, as well as patent challenge proceedings, including interference and administrative law proceedings before the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office ("U.S. PTO") and the European Patent Office ("EPO"), and oppositions and other comparable proceedings in other jurisdictions. Recently, under U.S. patent reform laws, new procedures including inter parts review and post grant review have been implemented. As stated below, the novel implementation of such reform laws presents uncertainty regarding the outcome of challenges to our patents in the future.

We cannot assure you that AL001, AL002 or any of our future product candidates will not infringe existing or future patents. We may be unaware of patents that have already issued that a third party might assert are infringed by AL001, AL002 or one of our future product candidates. Because patent applications can take many years to issue and may be confidential for eighteen months or more after filing, there may be applications now pending of which we are unaware of and which may later result in issued patents that we may infringe by commercializing AL001, AL002 or any of our future product candidates. In addition, third parties may obtain patents in the future and claim that use of our technologies infringes upon these patents. Moreover, we may face claims from non-practicing entities (commonly referred to as patent trolls), which have no relevant product revenue and against whom our own patent portfolio may thus have no deterrent effect.

We may be subject to third-party claims in the future against us or our collaborators that would cause us to incur substantial expenses and, if successful against us, could cause us to pay substantial damages, including treble damages and attorney's fees if we are found to be willfully infringing a third party's patents. If a patent infringement suit were brought against us or our collaborators, we or our collaborators could be forced to stop or delay research, development, manufacturing or sales of AL001 or AL002. As a result of patent infringement claims, or in order to avoid potential claims, we or our collaborators may choose to seek, or be required to seek, a license from the third party and would most likely be required to pay license fees or royalties or both. These licenses may not be available on acceptable terms, or at all. Even if we or our collaborators were able to obtain a license, the rights may be nonexclusive, which would give our competitors access to the same intellectual property. Ultimately, we could be prevented from commercializing a product, or forced to redesign it, or to cease some aspect of our business operations if, as a result of actual or threatened patent infringement claims, we or our collaborators are unable to enter into licenses on acceptable terms. Even if we are successful in defending such claims, infringement and other intellectual property litigation can be expensive and time-consuming to litigate and divert management's attention from our core business. Any of these events could harm our business significantly.

In addition to infringement claims against us, if third parties have prepared and filed patent applications in the U.S. that also claim technology to which we have rights, we may have to participate in interference proceedings in the U.S. PTO to determine the priority of invention. Third parties may also attempt to initiate reexamination, post grant review or inter partes review of our patents in the U.S. PTO. We may also become involved in similar opposition proceedings in the EPO or comparable offices in other jurisdictions regarding our intellectual property rights with respect to our products and technology. Any of these claims could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**If our efforts to protect the proprietary nature of the intellectual property related to AL001, AL002 or any of our potential future product candidates are not adequate, we may not be able to compete effectively in our market.**

We expect to rely upon a combination of patents, trade secret protection as well as confidentiality and license agreements to protect the intellectual property related to our product and our current product candidates and our development programs.

Composition-of-matter patents on an active pharmaceutical ingredient are generally considered to be the strongest form of intellectual property protection for pharmaceutical products, as such patents provide protection without regard to any particular method of use or manufacture. We cannot be certain that the claims in any patent application that we may submit covering composition-of-matter of AL001, AL002 and any potential future product candidates will be considered patentable by the U.S. PTO and courts in the U.S., or by the patent offices and courts in foreign countries. Method-of-use patents protect the use of a product for the specified method. This type of patent does not prevent a competitor from making and marketing a product that is identical to our product for an indication that is outside the scope of the patented method.

The strength of patents involves complex legal and scientific questions and can be uncertain. The patent applications that we may in the future own or license may fail to result in issued patents in the U.S. or in other foreign countries. Even if the patents do successfully issue, third parties may challenge the validity, enforceability or scope thereof, which may result in such patents being narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable. Furthermore, even if they are unchallenged, any of our future patents and patent applications may not adequately protect our intellectual property or prevent others from designing around our claims. If the breadth or strength of protection provided by the patent applications we may in the future own, in-license or pursue with respect to AL001, AL002 or any future product candidates is threatened, it could threaten our ability to commercialize AL001, AL002 or any future product candidates. Further, if we encounter delays in our development efforts, the period of time during which we could market AL001, AL002 or any future product candidates under patent protection would be reduced. Since patent applications in the U.S. and most other countries are confidential for a period of time after filing, we cannot be certain that we were the first to file any patent application related to AL001, AL002, or any future product candidates.



Even where laws provide protection, costly and time-consuming litigation could be necessary to enforce and determine the scope of our proprietary rights, and the outcome of such litigation would be uncertain. Moreover, any actions we may bring to enforce our intellectual property against our competitors could provoke them to bring counterclaims against us, and some of our competitors have substantially greater intellectual property portfolios than we have.

We will also rely on trade secret protection and confidentiality agreements to protect proprietary know-how that is not patentable, processes for which patents are difficult to enforce and any other elements of our product development processes that involve proprietary know-how, information or technology that is not covered by patents. Although we endeavor to execute confidentiality agreements with all of our employees, consultants, advisors and any third parties who have access to our proprietary know-how, information or technology, we cannot be certain that we have executed such agreements with all parties who may have helped to develop our intellectual property or had access to our proprietary information, nor that our agreements will not be breached. We cannot guarantee that our trade secrets and other confidential proprietary information will not be disclosed or that competitors will not otherwise gain access to our trade secrets or independently develop substantially equivalent information and techniques. Further, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect proprietary rights to the same extent or in the same manner as the laws of the EU or the U.S. As a result, we may encounter significant problems in protecting and defending our intellectual property both in the U.S. and elsewhere. If we are unable to prevent material disclosure of the intellectual property related to our technologies to third parties, we will not be able to establish or maintain a competitive advantage in our market, which could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Any disclosure to or misappropriation by third parties of our confidential proprietary information could enable competitors to quickly duplicate or surpass our technological achievements, thus eroding our competitive position in our market.

**Changes in patent law could diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect AL001 and AL002.**

As is the case with other biopharmaceutical companies, our success will be heavily dependent on intellectual property, particularly patents. Obtaining and enforcing patents in the biopharmaceutical industry involves both technological and legal complexity. Therefore, obtaining and enforcing biopharmaceutical patents is costly, time-consuming and inherently uncertain. In addition, the U.S. has recently enacted and is currently implementing wide-ranging patent reform legislation. The U.S. Supreme Court has ruled on several patent cases in recent years, either narrowing the scope of patent protection available in certain circumstances or weakening the rights of patent owners in other situations. In addition to increasing uncertainty with regard to our ability to obtain patents in the future, this combination of events has created uncertainty with respect to the value of patents, once obtained. Depending on decisions by the U.S. Congress, the federal courts, and the U.S. PTO, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in ways that would weaken our ability to obtain patents and to enforce patents that we might obtain in the future. Similarly, changes in EU patent law and elsewhere could negatively affect the value of our patents registered outside of the U.S.

**Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with any of these requirements.**

The U.S. PTO and various foreign governmental patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other provisions during the patent process. There are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of a patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. In such an event, competitors might be able to enter the market earlier than would otherwise have been the case, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

**We may not be able to protect our intellectual property rights throughout the world.**

Filing, prosecuting and defending patents on AL001, AL002 and any future product candidates throughout the world is prohibitively expensive. Competitors may use our technologies in jurisdictions where we have not obtained patent protection to develop their own products and, further, may export otherwise infringing products to territories where we have patent protection, but where enforcement is not as strong as that in the U.S. These products may compete with our products in jurisdictions where we do not have any issued or licensed patents and our patent claims or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from so competing.

Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in foreign jurisdictions. The legal systems of certain countries, particularly certain developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents and other intellectual property protection, particularly those relating to biopharmaceuticals, which could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents or marketing of competing products in violation of our proprietary rights generally. Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions could result in substantial cost and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business.

### **Risks Related to this Offering**

#### **There is no public market for our Common Stock, and an active market in which investors can resell their shares may not develop.**

There is no public market for our Common Stock and we cannot predict when or if one may develop. Even if a public market were to develop, we cannot predict how active such a market would be, how it will develop or be sustained after this Offering, or how the development of such a market might affect the market price of our Common Stock. The offering price of the Offered Shares in this Offering is based on a number of factors, including market conditions in effect at the time of the Offering, and it may not be in any way indicative of the price at which our shares will trade following the completion of this Offering. Investors may not be able to resell Offered Shares at or above the offering price.

#### **We may require additional capital to support business growth, and this capital might not be available on acceptable terms, if at all.**

We need sufficient capital to fund our ongoing operations and continue our development. We intend to continue to make investments to support our business growth and may require additional funds to respond to business challenges. As a result, we may need to engage in equity or debt financings to secure additional funds. If we raise additional funds through further issuances of equity or convertible debt securities, our existing stockholders could suffer significant dilution, and any new equity securities we issue could have rights, preferences and privileges superior to those of holders of our Common Stock. Any debt financing secured by us in the future could involve restrictive covenants relating to our capital raising activities and other financial and operational matters, which may make it more difficult for us to obtain additional capital and to pursue business opportunities, including potential acquisitions. In addition, we may not be able to obtain additional financing on terms favorable to us, if at all. If we are unable to obtain adequate financing or financing on terms satisfactory to us, when and if we require it, our ability to continue to support our business growth, and to respond to business challenges could be significantly impaired.

#### **Investors in this Offering will experience immediate and substantial dilution: further, investors may suffer additional dilution as a result of the Placement Agreement and the SPA.**

If all of the Offered Shares offered hereby are sold, investors in this Offering will own 8.6% of the then outstanding shares of Common Stock but will have paid 63.6% of the total consideration for our outstanding shares, resulting in a dilution of \$6.90 per share. See the section entitled “Dilution.”

In addition, the Placement Agreement includes a weighted-average anti-dilution protective provision for certain current stockholders that would take effect upon conversion of the Series A Preferred Stock. Should all such 750,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock be converted into Common Stock, we would be obligated to issue to those current stockholders a number of shares of Common Stock roughly equal to 2,000,000 such shares, or approximately three percent (3%) of the total number of shares of our company issued and outstanding prior to this offering.

Further, the SPA discussed in the risk factor entitled “*Pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement we entered into with ALSF, we agreed to certain provisions that limit our flexibility*” below could further increase the dilution you would experience as a result of certain of its provisions, including the full ratchet anti-dilution protection conferred on ALSF by the SPA. While the degree of any dilution caused by the SPA’s anti-dilution protection is not quantifiable, it would only affect any issuances of Common Stock or Common Stock equivalents at a price below \$1.50 per share.

#### **The Placement Agent will have a significant degree of influence over our company, and its interests may diverge from ours and those of our stockholders.**

Given the covenants we have made with the Placement Agent in the Placement Agreement and the Uplisting Agreement, which include a number of significant constraints on how we operate our business and on our ability to obtain financing, in addition to enabling it to nominate a candidate to the Board, the Placement Agent will be able to significantly influence many of our decisions as well as all matters requiring approval by stockholders, including the election of directors and the approval of mergers or other business combinations transactions as well as other matters that will be considered by the Board. There can be no assurance that the interests of the Placement Agent will coincide with our own, that of our stockholders or any of the investors in this Offering.

#### **Greater risk of loss to the early investors than to later investors.**

There is no minimum offering. Consequently, we can close on any sum raised and do so on a rolling basis. As a result, there can be no assurance that we will raise a sufficient amount of capital enabling us to continue operations. If we fail to raise a sufficient amount of capital to continue our business, such failure may lead to investors losing their entire investment. In addition, if we raise an appreciable sum that is nevertheless substantially less than the Maximum Offering, we may have insufficient funds to fully implement our business strategy. Therefore, the sale of Offered Shares in an amount significantly less than the Maximum Offering could have material, adverse consequences on our business, financial condition and future outlook.

**Pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement we entered into with ALSF, we agreed to certain provisions that limit our flexibility.**

Pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement (the “SPA”) we entered into with ALSF, we agreed to certain provisions that limit our flexibility notwithstanding the fact that ALSF has not funded the purchase of the shares that it acquired (the “**ALSF Shares**”) in cash but through the issuance of a promissory note to us (the “**ALSF Note**”). While the ALSF Shares have been pledged to us as collateral for the repayment of the \$15,000,000 for the 10,000,000 shares of our Common Stock and ALSF is not entitled to vote such ALSF Shares or receive any distributions from us until the ALSF Note has been repaid (on a pro rata basis), we are bound by certain covenants contained in the SPA. These covenants include, but are not limited to: (i) full ratchet anti-dilution protection, (ii) most-favored nation status, (iii) denying us the right to enter into a variable rate transaction absent ALSF’s consent, (iv) a right to participate in any future financing we may consummate, and (v) to have all the ALSF Shares to which ALSF is entitled under the SPA be registered under the Securities Act within 180 days of the final closing of an initial public offering that we may conduct. See the SPA attached hereto as Exhibit 3.1.

**The offering price of the Offered Shares was arbitrarily determined.**

The offering price of the Offered Shares was determined by our management. The price of the Offered Shares does not necessarily bear any relationship to established valuation criteria such as earnings, book value or assets. Rather, the price of the Offered Shares was based upon various factors including prevailing market conditions, our future prospects and our capital structure. This price does not necessarily accurately reflect the actual value of the Offered Shares or the price that may be realized upon disposition of the Offered Shares.

**We may not satisfy a national securities exchange’s initial listing standards and, even if we do, we may experience a delay in the initial trading of our Common Stock on a national securities exchange.**

We intend to apply to list our Common Stock on a national securities exchange under the symbol “**ALZA**.” Our Common Stock will not commence trading on a national securities exchange until a number of conditions are met, including that we have raised the minimum amount of offering proceeds necessary for us to meet the initial listing requirements of a national securities exchange, which we currently estimate to be approximately \$4,000,000. There is no guarantee that we will be able to sell a sufficient number of Offered Shares to meet this requirement. Assuming we sell a sufficient number of Offered Shares to list on a national securities exchange, we expect trading to commence following the Termination Date of this Offering. However, we may wait before terminating the Offering and commencing the trading of our Common Stock on the national securities exchange the Company has selected in order to raise additional proceeds. In addition, in order to list, we will be required to, among other things, file with the Commission a post-qualification amendment to the Offering Statement, and then file a Form 8-A in order to register our shares under the Exchange Act. The post-qualification amendment of the Offering Statement is subject to review by the Commission, and there is no guarantee that such amendment will be qualified quickly after filing. Any delay in the qualification of the post-qualification amendment may cause a delay in the initial trading of our Common Stock on the national securities exchange the Company has selected. For all of the foregoing reasons, you may experience a delay between the closing of your purchase of the Offered Shares and the commencement of exchange trading of our Common Stock.

**The national securities exchange on which the Common Stock will be traded, assuming a successful application, may delist our Common Stock from trading, which would limit stockholders’ ability to trade their shares of our Common Stock.**

In the event we are able to list our Common Stock on the NYSE American or any other national securities exchange, the NYSE American or such other national securities exchange will require us to meet certain financial, public float, bid price and liquidity standards on an ongoing basis in order to continue the listing of our Common Stock. If we fail to meet these continued listing requirements, our Common Stock may be subject to delisting. If our Common Stock is delisted and we are not able to list our Common Stock on another national securities exchange, we expect our securities would be quoted on an over-the-counter market. If this were to occur, our stockholders could face significant material adverse consequences, including limited availability of market quotations for our Common Stock and reduced liquidity for the trading of our securities. In addition, we could experience a decreased ability to issue additional securities and obtain additional financing in the future.

**We may fail to meet our publicly announced guidance or other expectations about our business, which would cause our stock price to decline.**

We expect to provide guidance regarding our expected financial and business performance, such as projections regarding sales and production, as well as anticipated future revenues, gross margins, profitability and cash flows. Correctly identifying key factors affecting business conditions and predicting future events is inherently an uncertain process and our guidance may not ultimately be accurate. Our guidance is based on certain assumptions such as those relating to anticipated production and sales volumes and average sales prices, supplier and commodity costs, and planned cost reductions. If our guidance is not accurate or varies from actual results due to our inability to meet our assumptions or the impact on our financial performance that could occur as a result of various risks and uncertainties, the market value of our Common Stock could decline significantly.

**An investment in the Offered Shares is speculative and there can be no assurance of any return on any such investment.**

An investment in the Offered Shares is speculative and there is no assurance that investors will obtain any return on their investment. Investors will be subject to substantial risks involved in an investment in the Company, including the risk of losing their entire investment.

**The Offered Shares will be offered by us on a “best-efforts, no minimum” basis.**

The Offered Shares will be offered by us, or through the Underwriter, on a “best-efforts, no minimum” basis. In a “best-efforts, no minimum” offering such as the one described in this Offering Circular, there is no assurance that we will sell the Maximum Offering. Accordingly, we may close upon amounts less than the Maximum Offering which may not provide us with sufficient funds to fully implement our business plan. If the Maximum Offering is not sold, we may need to incur additional debt or raise additional equity financing to sustain our operations. Increasing the amount of debt would increase our debt service obligations and make less cash available for distribution to our stockholders or for other purposes, such as the development of our business, that could lead to an appreciation of our enterprise value. Further, increasing the amount of additional equity we are required to raise could further dilute investors participating in this Offering.

**No assurance regarding amount of proceeds of Offering.**

Pursuant to the terms of this Offering, we will offer up to \$45,000,000 in Offered Shares on a “best-efforts, no minimum” basis. Accordingly, investors will not know in advance whether the gross proceeds of this Offering will be a de minimis figure or up to \$45,000,000 (in each case, net of commissions and expenses), if any. There can be no assurance that the subscriptions for any dollar amount will be received or accepted by the Company or the Underwriter, if any. If we are only able to close on an amount that is significantly less than the Maximum Offering, our chances of effectuating our proposed plan of operations would be drastically reduced.

**The market price of our Common Stock may fluctuate, and you could lose all or part of your investment.**

The offering price for our Common Stock is based on a number of factors. Assuming a market for the Common Stock ever develops, the price of our Common Stock may decline following the initial listing on any such market. Further, it is possible that the initial listing price of the shares will be less than the price of the Offered Shares offered hereby. The stock market in general, and the market price of our Common Stock, will likely be subject to fluctuation, whether due to, or irrespective of, our operating results, financial condition and prospects.

Our financial performance, our industry’s overall performance, changing consumer preferences, technologies and advertiser requirements, government regulatory action, tax laws and market conditions in general could have a significant impact on the future market price of our Common Stock. Some of the other factors that could negatively affect our share price or result in fluctuations in our share price include:

- actual or anticipated variations in our periodic operating results;
- increases in market interest rates that lead purchasers of our Common Stock to demand a higher yield;
- changes in earnings estimates;
- changes in market valuations of similar companies;
- actions or announcements by our competitors;
- adverse market reaction to any increased indebtedness we may incur in the future;
- additions or departures of key personnel;
- actions by stockholders;
- speculation in the press or investment community; and
- our intentions and ability to list our Common Stock on a national securities exchange and our subsequent ability to maintain such listing.

**Because we do not have a compensation committee, stockholders will have to rely on our directors, only one of whom is independent, to perform these functions.**

We do not have a compensation committee comprised of an independent director. The Board performs these functions as a whole. Only one member of the Board is an independent director. Thus, there is a potential conflict in that board members who are also part of management will participate in discussions concerning management compensation and audit issues that may affect management decisions.

**Our failure to maintain effective internal controls over financial reporting could have an adverse impact on us**

We are required to establish and maintain appropriate internal controls over financial reporting. Failure to establish those controls, or any failure of those controls once established, could adversely impact our public disclosures regarding our business, financial condition or results of operations. In addition, management's assessment of internal controls over financial reporting may identify weaknesses and conditions that need to be addressed in our internal controls over financial reporting or other matters that may raise concerns for investors. Any actual or perceived weaknesses and conditions that need to be addressed in our internal control over financial reporting, disclosure of management's assessment of our internal controls over financial reporting or disclosure of our public accounting firm's attestation to or report on management's assessment of our internal controls over financial reporting may have an adverse impact on the price of our Common Stock.

**Upon the completion of this Offering, we may elect to become a public reporting company under the Exchange Act, and thereafter publicly report on an ongoing basis as an "emerging growth company" under the reporting rules set forth under the Exchange Act. If we elect not to do so, we will be required to publicly report on an ongoing basis under the reporting rules set forth in Regulation A for Tier 2 issuers. In either case, we will be subject to ongoing public reporting requirements that are less rigorous than Exchange Act rules for companies that are not "emerging growth companies," and our stockholders could receive less information than they might expect to receive from more mature public companies.**

Upon the completion of this offering, we may elect to become a public reporting company under the Exchange Act. If we do so, we will be required to publicly report on an ongoing basis as an "emerging growth company" (as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, which we refer to as the JOBS Act) under the reporting rules set forth under the Exchange Act. For so long as we remain an "emerging growth company," we may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other Exchange Act reporting companies that are not "emerging growth companies," including but not limited to:

- not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act;
- taking advantage of extensions of time to comply with certain new or revised financial accounting standards;
- being permitted to comply with reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements; and
- being exempt from the requirement to hold a non-binding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved.

We expect to take advantage of these reporting exemptions until we are no longer an emerging growth company. We would remain an "emerging growth company" for up to five years, although if the market value of our Common Stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of any October 31 before that time, we would cease to be an "emerging growth company" as of the following April 30.

If we elect not to become a public reporting company under the Exchange Act, we will continue to be required to publicly report on an ongoing basis under the reporting rules set forth in Regulation A for Tier 2 issuers. The ongoing reporting requirements under Regulation A are more relaxed than for "emerging growth companies" under the Exchange Act. The differences include, but are not limited to, being required to file only annual and semiannual reports, rather than annual and quarterly reports. Annual reports are due within 120 calendar days after the end of the issuer's fiscal year, and semiannual reports are due within 90 calendar days after the end of the first six months of the issuer's fiscal year.

In either case, we will be subject to ongoing public reporting requirements that are less rigorous than Exchange Act rules for companies that are not "emerging growth companies," and our stockholders could receive less information than they might expect to receive from more mature public companies.

**The requirements of being a public company may strain our resources, divert management's attention and affect our ability to attract and retain qualified board members.**

As a public company, we will continue to incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses, including costs associated with public company reporting requirements. If we elect to become subject to Section 12 of the Exchange Act (which we would be required to do before becoming a listed company), we also will incur costs associated with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, or the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, the Dodd-Frank Act and related rules implemented or to be implemented by the Commission. The expenses incurred by public companies generally for reporting and corporate governance purposes have been increasing. For so long as we qualify as an emerging growth company under the JOBS Act, we may make certain elections that would subject us to reduced reporting and corporate governance requirements. Nonetheless, we expect the rules and regulations associated with being a public company to increase our legal and financial compliance costs and to make some activities more time-consuming and costly, although we are currently unable to estimate these costs with any degree of certainty. These laws and regulations could also make it more difficult or costly for us to obtain certain types of insurance, including director and officer liability insurance, and we may be forced to accept constraints on policy limits and coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain coverage. These laws and regulations could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified persons to serve on our Board, our board committees or as our executive officers and may divert management's attention. Furthermore, if we are unable to satisfy our obligations as a public company, we could be subject to delisting of our Common Stock, fines, sanctions and other regulatory action and potentially civil litigation.

**The preparation of our financial statements involves the use of estimates, judgments and assumptions, and our financial statements may be materially affected if such estimates, judgments or assumptions prove to be inaccurate.**

Financial statements prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") typically require the use of estimates, judgments and assumptions that affect the reported amounts. Often, different estimates, judgments and assumptions could reasonably be used that would have a material effect on such financial statements, and changes in these estimates, judgments and assumptions may occur from period to period over time. These estimates, judgments and assumptions are inherently uncertain and, if our estimates were to prove to be wrong, we would face the risk that charges to income or other financial statement changes or adjustments would be required. Any such charges or changes could harm our business, including our financial condition and results of operations and the price of our securities. See "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" for a discussion of the accounting estimates, judgments and assumptions that we believe are the most critical to an understanding of our consolidated financial statements and our business.

**If securities industry analysts do not publish research reports on us, or publish unfavorable reports on us, then the market price and market trading volume of our Common Stock could be negatively affected.**

Any trading market for our Common Stock will be influenced in part by any research reports that securities industry analysts publish about us. We do not currently have and may never obtain research coverage by securities industry analysts. If no securities industry analysts commence coverage of us, the market price and market trading volume of our Common Stock could be negatively affected. In the event we are covered by analysts, and one or more of such analysts downgrade our securities, or otherwise reports on us unfavorably, or discontinues coverage of us, the market price and market trading volume of our Common Stock could be negatively affected.

**We have significant discretion over the use of the net proceeds.**

The maximum net proceeds to us from the sale of the Offered Shares, after deducting the expenses associated with the Offering, will be approximately \$40,000,000. The net proceeds of this Offering will be used for research and development activities and for specific purposes set forth under the heading "Use of Proceeds" below. Accordingly, our management will have broad discretion as to the application of such proceeds. The proceeds may be used to carry out our business plan, pay salaries to our employees, and satisfy our expenses, foreseeable and unforeseeable. As is the case with any business, it should be expected that certain expenses unforeseeable to management at this juncture will arise in the future. This uncertainty would apply in particular to the development and commercialization of AL001, AL002 or any future product candidates, as we have not yet generated any revenues because we have no products approved for commercial sale. There can be no assurance that management's use of proceeds generated through this Offering will prove optimal or translate into revenue or profitability for the Company. Investors are urged to consult with their attorneys, accountants, and personal investment advisors prior to making a decision to invest in the Company. See the section entitled "Use of Proceeds" herein.

**The forecasts of market growth included in this Offering Circular may prove to be inaccurate, and even if the markets in which we compete achieve the forecasted growth, we cannot assure you our business will grow at similar rates, if at all.**

Growth forecasts are subject to significant uncertainty and are based on assumptions and estimates, which may not prove to be accurate. Forecasts relating to the expected success of medicinal products or the date of FDA approvals, in particular including the forecasts or projections referenced in this Offering Circular, may prove to be inaccurate. Even if these markets experience the forecasted growth, we may not grow our business at similar rates, or at all. Our growth is subject to many factors, including our success in implementing our business strategy, which is subject to many risks and uncertainties. Accordingly, the forecasts of market growth included in this Offering Circular should not be taken as indicative of our future growth.

**We do not expect to declare or pay dividends in the foreseeable future.**

We do not expect to declare or pay dividends in the foreseeable future, as we anticipate that we will invest future earnings in the development and growth of our business. Therefore, holders of our Common Stock will not receive any return on their investment unless they sell their securities, and holders may be unable to sell their securities on favorable terms or at all.

## USE OF PROCEEDS

Assuming the sale by us of the Maximum Offering of \$45,000,000 and estimated expenses and commissions of \$4,500,000, the total net proceeds to us would be \$40,500,000, which we currently intend to use as set forth below. We expect from time to time to evaluate the acquisition of businesses, products and technologies for which a portion of the net proceeds will be used. As of the date of this Offering Circular, we cannot specify with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to us from the sale of Common Stock. Accordingly, we will retain broad discretion over the use of these proceeds, if any. The following table represents Management's best estimate of the uses of the net proceeds received from the sale of Common Stock assuming the sale of, respectively, 100%, 75%, 50% and 25% of the Offered Shares offered for sale in this offering.

	<b>Proceeds</b>			
	<b>100%</b>	<b>75%</b>	<b>50%</b>	<b>25%</b>
Licensing fees, pre-clinical activities and ongoing project support for the University of South Florida	\$ 2,500,000	\$ 2,500,000	\$ 2,500,000	\$ 2,500,000
FDA consulting and active project planning management	1,200,000	1,200,000	1,200,000	1,200,000
Finance and grant procurement activities	1,050,000	1,050,000	1,050,000	1,050,000
Establishment of advisory board, initial meetings, corporate development and initial consulting	250,000	250,000	250,000	250,000
Phase 1 clinical trial - AL002	2,000,000	2,000,000	2,000,000	2,000,000
Phase 1 clinical trial - AL001	2,000,000	2,000,000	2,000,000	2,000,000
Working capital	31,500,000	21,375,000	11,250,000	1,125,000
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 40,500,000</b>	<b>\$ 30,375,000</b>	<b>\$ 20,250,000</b>	<b>\$ 10,125,000</b>

The amounts set forth above are estimates, and we cannot be certain that actual costs will not vary from these estimates. Our management has significant flexibility and broad discretion in applying the net proceeds received in this Offering. We cannot assure you that our financial performance estimates will prove to be accurate or that unforeseen events, problems or delays will not occur that would require us to seek additional debt and/or equity funding, which may not be available on favorable terms, or at all. See "Risk Factors."

We believe opportunities may exist from time to time to expand our current business through license or acquisitions of, or investments in, complementary businesses, products or technologies. While we currently have no agreements or commitments to complete any such transaction at this time, we may use a portion of the net proceeds for these purposes.

Our management will have broad discretion over the use of the net proceeds from this offering. The amounts and timing of our expenditures will depend upon numerous factors including the results of our research and development efforts, the timing and success of preclinical studies or clinical trials we expect to commence in the near future, the timing of regulatory submissions, and any unforeseen cash needs.

Pending their uses, we plan to invest the net proceeds of this offering in short-term, interest-bearing, investment-grade instruments, certificates of deposit or direct or guaranteed obligations of the U.S. government.

Alzamend will continue to incur legal, executive, operational, financial, and support expenses as it pursues a listing with a national securities exchange following completion of this Offering, transitions from completing the latter pre-clinical stages into the IND processes for AL002 and finishes developing the IND plans and processes to transition into beginning the initial stage of clinical trials for the AL001 technology. Only since the fall of 2018, has an individual worked full-time to achieve our goals. On November 2, 2018, we accepted the resignation of our former President and CEO, Philip Mansour, and appointed Stephan Jackman as our current CEO. Mr. Jackman is an executive with a biopharma background and will lead Alzamend through its maturation process until such time as other full-time staff becomes necessary. The Company finalized the terms of this offering during the winter of 2018 and, as of December 15, 2018, we accepted the resignation of our former CFO, William B. Horne and appointed our current CFO, Kenneth S. Cragun, endeavoring to become publicly traded while preparing to begin our clinical trials sometime in the third quarter of 2020. On May 1, 2019 we hired Henry Nisser to be our General Counsel and Executive Vice President. Travel will be required to facilitate the timely setup and project management of all facets of the Company. The Company intends to use a part of the proceeds raised from this offering, if any, to fund the compensation payable to its three officers, any new staff as required by its activities and its Executive Chairman of the Board described under "Our Business – Employees" below. Funds to compensate these individuals will be drawn from the working capital item in the table above.



## DILUTION

If you purchase shares in this offering, your ownership interest in our Common Stock will be diluted immediately, to the extent of the difference between the price to the public charged for each share in this offering and the net tangible book value per share of our Common Stock after this Offering.

Our historical net tangible book value as of April 30, 2019 was \$316,915 or \$0.01 per then outstanding share of our Common Stock. Historical net tangible book value per share equals the amount of our total tangible assets less total liabilities, divided by the total number of shares of our Common Stock outstanding, all as of the date specified.

The following table illustrates the per share dilution to new investors discussed above, assuming the sale of, respectively, 100%, 75%, 50% and 25% of the shares offered for sale in this offering (after our estimated offering expenses of \$4,500,000, \$3,375,000, \$2,250,000 and \$1,125,000, respectively):

	<b>100%</b>	<b>75%</b>	<b>50%</b>	<b>25%</b>
Price to the public charged for each share in this offering	\$ 7.50	\$ 7.50	\$ 7.50	\$ 7.50
Historical net tangible book value per share as of April 30, 2019 (1)	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.01
Increase in net tangible book value per share attributable to new investors in this offering (2)	\$ 0.59	\$ 0.45	\$ 0.31	\$ 0.15
Net tangible book value per share, after this offering	\$ 0.60	\$ 0.46	\$ 0.32	\$ 0.16
Dilution per share to new investors	\$ 6.90	\$ 7.04	\$ 7.18	\$ 7.34

(1) Based on net tangible book value as of April 30, 2019, of \$316,915 and 61,878,465 outstanding shares of Common stock.

(2) After deducting our estimated offering expenses of \$4,500,000, \$3,375,000, \$2,250,000 and \$1,125,000, respectively.

The following table sets forth, assuming the sale of, respectively, 100%, 75%, 50% and 25% of the shares offered for sale in this offering (after our estimated offering expenses of \$4,500,000, \$3,375,000, \$2,250,000 and \$1,125,000, respectively), as of October 31, 2019, the total number of shares previously sold to existing stockholders, the total consideration paid for the foregoing and the average price paid per share. As the table shows, new investors purchasing shares may in certain circumstances pay an average price per share substantially higher than the average price per share paid by our existing stockholders:

	Shares Purchased		Total Consideration		Average Price
	Number	Percentage	Amount	Percentage	Per Share
Assuming 100% of shares sold:					
Existing stockholders	63,662,858	91.4%	\$ 23,191,345	36.4%	\$ 0.36
New investors	6,000,000	8.6%	40,500,000	63.6%	\$ 6.75
Total	69,662,858	100.0%	63,691,345	100.0%	\$ 0.91
	Shares Purchased		Total Consideration		Average Price
	Number	Percentage	Amount	Percentage	Per Share
Assuming 75% of shares sold:					
Existing stockholders	63,662,858	93.4%	\$ 23,191,345	43.3%	\$ 0.36
New investors	4,500,000	6.6%	30,375,000	56.7%	\$ 6.75
Total	68,162,858	100.0%	53,566,345	100.0%	\$ 0.79
	Shares Purchased		Total Consideration		Average Price
	Number	Percentage	Amount	Percentage	Per Share
Assuming 50% of shares sold:					
Existing stockholders	63,662,858	95.5%	\$ 23,191,345	53.4%	\$ 0.36
New investors	3,000,000	4.5%	20,250,000	46.6%	\$ 6.75
Total	66,662,858	100.0%	43,441,345	100.0%	\$ 0.65
	Shares Purchased		Total Consideration		Average Price
	Number	Percentage	Amount	Percentage	Per Share
Assuming 25% of shares sold:					
Existing stockholders	63,662,858	97.7%	\$ 23,191,345	69.6%	\$ 0.36
New investors	1,500,000	2.3%	10,125,000	30.4%	\$ 6.75
Total	65,162,858	100.0%	33,316,345	100.0%	\$ 0.51

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

You should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of our operations together with our consolidated financial statements and the notes thereto appearing elsewhere in this Offering Circular. This discussion contains forward-looking statements reflecting our current expectations, whose actual outcomes involve risks and uncertainties. Actual results and the timing of events may differ materially from those stated in or implied by these forward-looking statements due to a number of factors, including those discussed in the sections entitled "Risk Factors," "Cautionary Statement regarding Forward-Looking Statements" and elsewhere in this Offering Circular. Please see the notes to our Financial Statements for information about our Significant Accounting Policies and Recent Accounting Pronouncements.

On May 29, 2018, we implemented a 1-for-4 Reverse Stock Split of our Common Stock. The Reverse Stock Split became effective on December 13, 2018. As a result of the Reverse Stock Split, every four (4) shares of our pre-Reverse Stock Split Common Stock were combined and reclassified into one share of the Common Stock. The number of shares of Common Stock subject to outstanding options and warrants were also reduced by a factor of four as of December 13, 2018 and their respective exercise prices were increased by a factor of four. All historical share and per-share amounts reflected throughout the consolidated financial statements and other financial information in this filing have been adjusted to reflect the Reverse Stock Split. Neither the authorized shares of capital stock nor the par value per share of the Common Stock was affected by the Reverse Stock Split.

### Summary of Results

#### **RESULTS OF OPERATIONS FOR THE SIX MONTHS ENDED OCTOBER 31, 2019 AND 2018**

The following table summarizes the results of our operations for the six months ended October 31, 2019 and 2018.

#### ALZAMEND NEURO, INC. Statements of Operations (Unaudited)

	<b>For the Six Months Ended October 31,</b>	
	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>
<b>OPERATING EXPENSES</b>		
Research and development	\$ 399,916	\$ 2,757,776
General and administrative	1,264,976	376,232
Total operating expenses	<u>1,664,892</u>	<u>3,134,008</u>
<b>Loss from operations</b>	(1,664,892)	(3,134,008)
<b>OTHER INCOME</b>		
Interest income - related party	8,893	83,767
<b>Total other income</b>	<u>8,893</u>	<u>83,767</u>
<b>NET LOSS</b>	<u>\$ (1,655,999)</u>	<u>\$ (3,050,241)</u>
<b>Basic and diluted net loss per common share</b>	<u>\$ (0.02)</u>	<u>\$ (0.06)</u>
<b>Basic and diluted weighted average common shares outstanding</b>	<u>70,408,014</u>	<u>50,958,276</u>

### **Revenue**

Alzamend Neuro, Inc. was formed on February 26, 2016, to acquire and commercialize patented intellectual property and know-how to prevent, treat and cure the crippling and deadly disease, Alzheimer's. We currently have only two product candidates, AL001 and AL002. These products are in the early stage of development and will require extensive clinical study, review and evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before they and any successors could provide us with any revenue. We did not generate any revenues during the six months ended October 31, 2019 and 2018, and we do not anticipate that we will generate revenue for the foreseeable future.

## General and administrative expenses

General and administrative expenses for the six months ending October 31, 2019 and 2018, were \$1,264,976 and \$376,232, respectively. As reflected in the table below, general and administrative expenses primarily consisted of the following expense categories: management services, professional fees, stock compensation expense, salaries and benefits. The remaining general and administrative expenses of \$69,396 and \$70,674, respectively, primarily consisted of payments for advertising and promotion, transfer agent fees, travel, and other office expenses, none of which is significant individually.

	For the Six Months Ended October 31,	
	2019	2018
Management Services	\$ -	\$ 120,000
Professional fees	293,222	185,560
Stock compensation expense	713,661	-
Salary and benefits	188,697	-
Other general and administrative expenses	69,396	70,672
Total general and administrative expenses	<u>\$ 1,264,976</u>	<u>\$ 376,232</u>

### Management services

As of October 31, 2019, we had one full-time and two part-time employees. We accepted the resignation of our previous President and CEO, Philip Mansour, effective on November 18, 2018, and appointed Mr. Stephan Jackman as CEO as of November 30, 2018. Mr. Jackman is a full-time executive with extensive scientific and medical experience in developing immunotherapies and their commercialization to lead Alzamend's activities. As of December 15, 2018, we accepted the resignation of our former CFO, William B. Horne and retained our current CFO, Kenneth S. Cragun. On May 1, 2019 we hired Henry Nisser to be our General Counsel and Executive Vice President. Prior to hiring Mr. Jackman, Mr. Cragun and Mr. Nisser, management services were provided by our two previous executive officers and Executive Chairman pursuant to the terms of a management services agreement (the "MSA") entered into with Avalanche International, Corp. ("Avalanche"), a related party, on May 1, 2016. Avalanche provided management, consulting and financial services to us. Such services included advice and assistance concerning any and all aspects of operations, planning and financing of Alzamend and conducting relations with accountants, attorney, financial advisors and other professionals. The term of the MSA, as amended, was for the period May 1, 2016 to December 31, 2017, and was extended by written agreement. We initially paid \$40,000 per month for these services and, beginning February 2017, began paying \$20,000 per month. During the six months ended October 31, 2018, we recognized \$120,000 in management fees in connection with this agreement. The MSA expired as of December 31, 2018.

### Professional fees

The second largest component of our general and administrative expenses is professional fees. During the six months ended October 31, 2019 and 2018, we reported professional fees of \$293,222 and \$185,560, respectively, which are principally comprised of the following items:

#### Six Months Ended October 31, 2019

- In June 2107, we entered into a five year consulting agreement with Spartan Capital Securities, LLC ("Spartan") pursuant to which Spartan has agreed to provide consulting services with respect to general corporate matters, including, but not limited to, advice and input with respect to raising capital, potential merger and acquisition transactions, identifying suitable personnel for management, developing corporate structure and finance strategies, assisting us with strategic introductions, assisting management with enhancing corporate and shareholder value and introducing us to potential investors. In December 2017, since the maximum amount was raised in the prior private placement, we paid to Spartan a consulting fee of \$1,400,000 for the services to be rendered over the sixty (60) month term of this consulting agreement. During the six months ended October 31, 2019, we recorded an expense of \$140,000 as a result of this consulting agreement.
- During the six months ended October 31, 2019, we incurred \$52,070 in legal fees.
- During the six months ended October 31, 2019, we incurred \$47,396 in audit fees.

#### *Six Months Ended October 31, 2018*

- During the six months ended October 31, 2018, we recorded an expense of \$140,000 as a result of the Spartan consulting agreement discussed above.
- During the six months ended October 31, 2018, we incurred \$41,916 in legal fees.

#### *Stock Compensation Expense*

During the six months ended October 31, 2019, we incurred \$713,661 in general and administrative stock compensation expense related to stock option grants to executives, employees and consultants. All option grants are granted at the per share fair value on the grant date. Vesting of options differs based on the terms of each option. We valued the options at their date of grant utilizing the Black Scholes option pricing model. Stock-based compensation is a non-cash expense because we settle these obligations by issuing shares of our Common Stock from authorized shares instead of settling such obligations with cash payments.

#### *Salaries and Benefits*

During the six months ended October 31, 2019, we incurred \$188,697, in employee-related expenses. As of October 31, 2019, we had one full-time and two part-time employees. We appointed Mr. Stephan Jackman as CEO as of November 30, 2018. As of December 15, 2018, we retained our current CFO, Kenneth S. Cragun. On May 1, 2019 we hired Henry Nisser to be our General Counsel and Executive Vice President.

#### **Research and development expenses**

Research and development expenses for the six months ending October 31, 2019 and 2018, were \$399,916 and \$2,757,776, respectively. As reflected in the table below, research and development expenses primarily consisted of professional fees as well as licenses and fees.

	<b>For the Six Months Ended October 31,</b>	
	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>
Licenses and fees	\$ 50,000	\$ 2,489,600
Professional fees	234,043	264,439
Stock compensation expense	115,873	-
Other research and development expenses	-	3,737
Total research and development expenses	<u>\$ 399,916</u>	<u>\$ 2,757,776</u>

#### *Licenses and fees*

There are certain initial license fees and milestone payments required to be paid to the University of South Florida and the USF Research Foundation, for the licenses of the Technologies, pursuant to the terms of the License Agreement with Sublicensing Terms (the "License Agreement") with the Licensor and a direct support organization of the University.

The License Agreement for AL002 requires us to pay royalty payments of 4% on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology while the AL001 License Agreements require us to pay combined royalty payments of four and one-half percent (4.5%) on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology. We have already paid an initial license fee of \$200,000 for AL002 and an initial license fee of \$200,000 for AL001. As an additional licensing fee for the license of AL002, the Licensor received 3,601,809 shares of Common Stock. As an additional licensing fee for the license of the AL001 technologies, the Licensor received 2,227,923 shares Common Stock. Additionally, we are required to pay milestone payments on the due dates to the Licensor for the license of the AL002 technology and for the AL001 technologies.

During the six months ended October 31, 2019, we incurred \$50,000 in license fees related to achieving the milestone of conducting pre-IND discussions with the FDA regarding AL001.

During the six months ended October 31, 2018, we incurred \$2,489,600 in licenses and fees, \$2,227,923 of which related to non-cash charges from the issuances of Common Stock to the Licensor.

### Professional fees

During the six months ended October 31, 2019 and 2018, the Company reported professional fees of \$234,043 and \$264,439, respectively, which are principally comprised of professional fees attributed to various types of scientific services, including FDA consulting services.

### Stock Compensation Expense

During the six months ended October 31, 2019, we incurred \$115,873 in research and development stock compensation expense related to stock option grants to executives, employees and consultants. All option grants are granted at the per share fair value on the grant date. Vesting of options differs based on the terms of each option. We valued the options at their date of grant utilizing the Black Scholes option pricing model. Stock-based compensation is a non-cash expense because we settle these obligations by issuing shares of our Common Stock from authorized shares instead of settling such obligations with cash payments.

### Other income (expense), net

During the six months ended October 31, 2019 and 2018, the Company reported interest income, related party of \$8,893 and \$83,767, respectively, relating to a promissory note from Avalanche.

### Current and deferred income taxes

As of October 31, 2019 and 2018, the Company had deferred tax assets totaling \$2,194,303 and \$1,186,674, respectively. The ultimate realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon the existence, or generation, of taxable income in the periods when those temporary differences and net operating loss carryovers are deductible. Management considers the scheduled reversal of deferred tax liabilities, taxes paid in carryover years, projected future taxable income, available tax planning strategies, and other factors in making this assessment. Based on available evidence, management believes it is less likely than not that all of the deferred tax assets will be realized. Accordingly, the Company has established a 100% valuation allowance. As a result of the full valuation allowance, the Company did not record an income tax benefit during the six months ended October 31, 2019 and 2018.

## RESULTS OF OPERATIONS FOR THE YEARS ENDED APRIL 30, 2019 AND 2018

The following table summarizes the results of our operations for the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018.

### ALZAMEND NEURO, INC. Condensed Statements of Operations

	For the Year Ended April 30,	
	2019	2018
<b>OPERATING EXPENSES</b>		
Research and development	\$ 3,700,083	\$ 323,403
General and administrative	1,308,800	575,027
Total operating expenses	5,008,883	898,430
<b>Loss from operations</b>	(5,008,883)	(898,430)
<b>OTHER INCOME (EXPENSE), NET</b>		
Interest income - related party	146,387	7,341
Interest expense	-	(30,259)
Interest expense - debt discount	-	(10,315)
<b>Total other income (expense), net</b>	146,387	(33,233)
<b>NET LOSS</b>	<u>\$ (4,862,496)</u>	<u>\$ (931,663)</u>
<b>Basic and diluted net loss per common share</b>	<u>\$ (0.08)</u>	<u>\$ (0.02)</u>
<b>Basic and diluted weighted average common shares outstanding</b>	<u>58,843,040</u>	<u>45,389,196</u>

## Revenue

Alzamend Neuro, Inc. was formed on February 26, 2016, to acquire and commercialize patented intellectual property and know-how to prevent, treat and cure the crippling and deadly disease, Alzheimer's. We currently have only two product candidates, AL001 and AL002. These products are in the early stage of development and will require extensive clinical study, review and evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before they and any successors could provide us with any revenue. We did not generate any revenues during the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, and we do not anticipate that we will generate revenue for the foreseeable future.

## General and administrative expenses

General and administrative expenses for the years ending April 30, 2019 and 2018, were \$1,308,800 and \$575,027, respectively. As reflected in the table below, general and administrative expenses primarily consisted of the following expense categories: management services, professional fees, stock compensation expense, salaries and benefits, and advertising and promotion. The remaining general and administrative expenses of \$85,360 and \$55,298, respectively, primarily consisted of payments for consulting, transfer agent fees, travel, and other office expenses, none of which is significant individually.

	For the Year Ended April 30,	
	2019	2018
Management services	\$ 160,000	\$ 240,000
Professional fees	545,771	249,820
Stock compensation expense	396,170	-
Salary and benefits	96,460	-
Advertising and promotion	25,039	29,909
Other general and administrative expenses	85,360	55,298
Total general and administrative expenses	<u>\$ 1,308,800</u>	<u>\$ 575,027</u>

### Management services

As of April 30, 2019, we had two full-time and one part-time employee. We accepted the resignation of our previous President and CEO, Philip Mansour, effective on November 18, 2018, and appointed Mr. Stephan Jackman as CEO as of November 30, 2018. Mr. Jackman is a full-time executive with extensive scientific and medical experience in developing immunotherapies and their commercialization to lead Alzamend's activities. As of December 15, 2018, we accepted the resignation of our former CFO, William B. Horne and retained our current CFO, Kenneth S. Cragun. Prior to hiring Mr. Jackman and Mr. Cragun, the services of our two officers and Executive Chairman were provided pursuant to the terms of an MSA entered into with Avalanche, a related party, on May 1, 2016. Avalanche provided management, consulting and financial services to us. Such services included advice and assistance concerning any and all aspects of operations, planning and financing of Alzamend and conducting relations with accountants, attorney, financial advisors and other professionals. The term of the MSA, as amended, was for the period May 1, 2016 to December 31, 2017, and was extended by written agreement. We initially paid \$40,000 per month for these services and, beginning February 2017, began paying \$20,000 per month. During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, we recognized \$160,000 and \$240,000, respectively, in management fees in connection with this agreement. At April 30, 2019 and April 30, 2018, \$75,000 and \$3,000, respectively, was included within related party payable on our balance sheet. The MSA expired as of December 31, 2018.

### Professional fees

The second largest component of our general and administrative expenses is professional fees. During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, we reported professional fees of \$545,771 and \$249,820, respectively, which are principally comprised of the following items:

#### Year Ended April 30, 2019

- In June 2017, we entered into a five year consulting agreement with Spartan pursuant to which Spartan has agreed to provide consulting services with respect to general corporate matters, including, but not limited to, advice and input with respect to raising capital, potential merger and acquisition transactions, identifying suitable personnel for management, developing corporate structure and finance strategies, assisting us with strategic introductions, assisting management with enhancing corporate and shareholder value and introducing us to potential investors. In December 2017, since the maximum amount was raised in a prior private placement, we paid to Spartan a consulting fee of \$1,400,000 for the services to be rendered over the sixty (60) month term of this consulting agreement. During the year ended April 30, 2019, we recorded an expense of \$280,000 in connection with this consulting agreement.

- During the year ended April 30, 2019, we incurred \$130,524 in legal fees.
- During the year ended April 30, 2019, we incurred \$75,903 in audit fees.

#### *Year Ended April 30, 2018*

- During the year ended April 30, 2018, we incurred \$82,202 in audit fees.
- During January 2017, we entered into consulting agreements with two consultants. Both consulting agreements had a term of one year and provided for aggregate compensation of \$50,000. The consulting services included assistance in evaluating strategic opportunities, business advice and services related to sales, marketing, investor relation and other incidental services on behalf of our company. During the year ended April 30, 2018, we recorded an expense of \$35,617 as a result of these two consulting agreements.
- During the year ended April 30, 2018, we recorded an expense of \$93,333 in connection with the Spartan consulting agreement referred to above.

#### *Advertising and promotion*

During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, we incurred \$25,039 and \$29,909, respectively, in advertising and promotion related expenses. The majority of these expenditures was related to direct advertising of our Offering Statement on Google and Facebook and the development of a web and social media strategy.

#### **Research and development expenses**

Research and development expenses for the years ending April 30, 2019 and 2018, were \$3,700,083 and \$323,403, respectively. As reflected in the table below, research and development expenses primarily consisted of licenses and fees as well as professional fees.

	<b>For the Year Ended April 30,</b>	
	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>
Licenses and fees	\$ 2,489,600	\$ 219,162
Professional fees	1,142,887	101,277
Other research and development expenses	67,596	2,964
Total research and development expenses	<u>\$ 3,700,083</u>	<u>\$ 323,403</u>

#### *Licenses and fees*

There are certain initial license fees and milestone payments required to be paid to the University and the USF Health Byrd Alzheimer's Institute, a multi-disciplinary center at the University, for the licenses of the technologies, pursuant to the terms of the License Agreement with the Licensor and a direct support organization of the University.

The License Agreement for AL002 requires us to pay royalty payments of 4% on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology while the License Agreement for AL001 requires us to pay combined royalty payments of four and one-half percent (4.5%) on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology. We have already paid an initial license fee of \$200,000 for AL002 and an initial license fee of \$200,000 for AL001. As an additional licensing fee for the license of AL002, the Licensor received 3,601,809 shares of Common Stock. As an additional licensing fee for the license of the AL001 technologies, the Licensor received 2,227,925 shares Common Stock. Additionally, we are required to pay milestone payments on the due dates to the Licensor for the license of the AL002 technology and for the AL001 technologies

During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, we incurred \$2,227,923 and \$218,417, respectively, in non-cash charges from issuances of Common Stock to the Licensor.

#### *Professional fees*

The second largest component of our research and development expenses is professional fees. During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, we reported professional fees of \$1,142,887 and \$101,277, respectively, which are principally comprised of professional fees incurred by us during the year ended April 30, 2018, are attributed to various types of scientific services, including FDA consulting services. The increase in professional fees during the year ended April 30, 2019, relates primarily to fees incurred to conduct a preclinical toxicology mice study and an evaluation of AL002.



#### ***Other (expense) income, net***

During the year ended April 30, 2019, we reported other income from related parties of \$146,387.

During the year ended April 30, 2018, we reported other expense, net, of \$33,233. Other expense includes interest expense of \$30,259 and amortization of original issue discounts on notes payable and notes payable, related parties of \$10,315, partially offset by \$7,341 of interest income, related parties. At April 30, 2019 and 2018, we had no outstanding borrowings.

#### ***Current and deferred income taxes***

We have made the decision to fully reserve our net deferred tax assets. As a result of this decision, we did not record an income tax benefit during the year ended April 30, 2019 and 2018.

The ultimate realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon the existence, or generation, of taxable income in the periods when those temporary differences and net operating loss carryovers are deductible. Management considers the scheduled reversal of deferred tax liabilities, taxes paid in carryover years, projected future taxable income, available tax planning strategies, and other factors in making this assessment. Based on available evidence, management believes it is less likely than not that all of the deferred tax assets will be realized. Accordingly, we have established a 100% valuation allowance.

#### ***Current Plan of Operations***

Our plan of operations is currently focused on the development of both our therapeutic candidates which are at different stages in development. We have begun the process of finalizing the IND application for AL001 and expect to receive approval to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects in the third quarter 2020.

In November 2018, we began a toxicological preclinical study for AL002 with CRL in compliance with FDA requirements. Upon conclusion of this toxicological study, anticipated to occur in the second quarter of 2020, we expect to begin the process of finalizing the IND application process and move quickly forward to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects during the latter half of 2020.

We engaged Emory University, located in Atlanta, Georgia, to develop and plan the Phase 1 Clinical Trial protocols, processes and plan. Dr. Ihab Hajjar, Neurologist at the Emory Clinic, has been selected to be the Lead Investigator for this set of clinical activities. We have also retained a division of the international Swiss manufacturer, Lonza, to develop the manufacturing protocols, processes and procedures. Lonza is the worldwide leader in producing immunological proprietary and contracted pharma solutions. We anticipate selecting Emory University as the host for the Phase 1 Clinical Trial, which will be led by Dr. Hajjar at the Emory Clinic.

In November 2018, we adopted a Charter for our Scientific Advisory Board (“SAB”) and have announced the appointment of two SAB members, Dr. Thomas Wisniewski (Director of the NYU Pearl Barlow Center for Memory Evaluation and Treatment) and Dr. Eric McDade (Associate Director of the Dominantly Inherited Alzheimer Network Trials Unit (DIAN-TU)). The SAB members have clinical specializations, including extensive experience with AD and other neurological diseases. We intend to rely on this advisory group of experts to help guide our therapies through the related scientific and manufacturing initiatives.

The continuation of our current plan of operations to completing our IND application and beginning the series of human clinical trials for each of our therapeutics requires us to promptly raise significant additional capital. If we are successful in raising capital, we believe that we will have sufficient cash resources to fund our operations.

Because our working capital requirements depend upon numerous factors, including the progress of our preclinical and clinical testing, timing and cost of obtaining regulatory approvals, changes in levels of resources that we devote to the development of manufacturing and marketing capabilities, competitive and technological advances, status of competitors, and our ability to establish collaborative arrangements with other organizations, we will require additional financing to fund future operations.

#### ***FDA consulting and active project planning management***

We have retained TAMM Net, Inc., an experienced and highly-regarded regulatory consultancy firm based in Georgia for project management; to lead, develop and manage our preclinical and clinical efforts, extending from the current status of each product candidate through the exit or commercialization of the technologies that we have licensed. We may retain an experienced Canadian Health and European Union consulting firm to commercialize these same technologies for these geographic markets.

#### ***Funding new AD research and acquisition of licenses to treat or cure AD***

We have committed to funding new research projects from Dr. Cao and his medical team for up to the next three years or more.

We obtained two royalty-bearing, exclusive worldwide licenses from the Licensor, originally called LisPro, now given the name of AL001 for regulatory and company confidentiality, a cocrystal biologic therapy to mitigate extreme agitation and forestall further deterioration of memory as displayed by patients with up to moderate AD effective as of July 2, 2018.

We are dedicated to acquiring and supporting new research to treat or cure AD and reserve the right to evaluate and pursue each opportunity as it may arise.

We continually evaluate our plan of operations discussed above to determine the manner in which we can most effectively utilize our limited cash resources. The timing of completion of any aspect of our plan of operations is highly dependent upon the availability of cash to implement that aspect of the plan and other factors beyond our control. There is no assurance that we will successfully obtain the required capital or revenues, or, if obtained, that the amounts will be sufficient to fund our ongoing operations. The inability to secure additional capital would have a material adverse effect on us, including the possibility that we would have to sell or forego a portion or all of our assets or cease operations. If we discontinue our operations, we will not have sufficient funds to pay any amounts to our stockholders.

Even if we raise additional capital, if our current and planned clinical trials for AL001 and AL002 in the United States do not demonstrate continuing progress toward taking our product to market, our ability to raise additional capital in the future to fund our product development efforts would likely be seriously impaired. The ability of a biotechnology company, such as Alzamend, to raise additional capital in the marketplace to fund its continuing development operations, is conditioned upon moving the development of products toward regulatory approval and commercialization. If in the future we are not able to demonstrate adequate progress in the development of our product, we will not be able to raise the capital we need to continue our then current business operations and business activities, and we will likely not have sufficient liquidity or cash resources to continue operating.

Because our working capital requirements depend upon numerous factors, including progress of our research and development programs, pre-clinical and clinical testing, timing and cost of obtaining regulatory approvals, changes in levels of resources that we devote to the development of manufacturing and marketing capabilities, competitive and technological advances, status of competitors, and our ability to establish collaborative arrangements with other organizations, there can be no assurance that our current cash resources will be sufficient to fund our operations beyond the next twelve months. At present, we have no committed external sources of capital, and do not expect any significant product revenues for the foreseeable future. Thus, in the future we will require additional financing to fund future operations. There can be no assurance, however, that we will be able to obtain funds on acceptable terms, if at all.

## **LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES**

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared on the basis that the Company will continue as a going concern. As of October 31, 2019, the Company had cash of \$165,617 and an accumulated deficit of \$9,031,632. The Company has incurred recurring losses and reported losses for the six months ended October 31, 2019 totaled \$1,656,999. In the past, the Company has financed its operations principally through issuances of promissory notes and equity securities.

The Company expects to continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future and needs to raise additional capital until it is able to generate revenues from operations sufficient to fund its development and commercial operations. Based on our current business plan, we believe that our cash and cash equivalents at October 31, 2019, are not sufficient to meet our anticipated cash requirements during the twelve-month period subsequent to the issuance of the financial statements included in this Offering Circular. Management believes that the Company has access to capital resources through potential public or private issuance of debt or equity securities. However, the Company cannot be certain that additional funding will be available on acceptable terms, or at all, in which case it may have to significantly delay, scale back or discontinue the development and/or commercialization of its products. The Company may also be required to (a) seek collaborators for its product at an earlier stage than otherwise would be desirable and on terms that are less favorable than might otherwise be available; or (b) relinquish or otherwise dispose of rights to technology or its product that the Company would otherwise seek to deploy or commercialize. These matters raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. The accompanying financial statements do not include any adjustments that might become necessary should the Company be unable to continue as a going concern.

On March 20, 2019, we entered into securities purchase agreements for the purchase of 157,346 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$236,023, or \$1.50 per share with 78,672 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance. The purchase price of \$236,023 was paid in cash. In May 2019, an additional 27,667 shares of Common Stock were sold under the same terms for a total purchase price of \$41,501.

On April 30, 2019, we entered into a securities purchase agreement for the purchase of 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$15,000,000, or \$1.50 per share with 5,000,000 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance. The total purchase price of \$15,000,000 was in the form of a note receivable initially with a 12-month term from Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC, a related party. The term of the note receivable was extended to December 31, 2020. While this transaction did not provide immediate liquidity, as the note receivable is paid, we expect this to be a source of future capital resources.

On April 10, 2018, Avalanche issued a promissory note (the “AVLP Note”) to evidence our loan of up to \$995,500 for a period ending on April 30, 2019, subject to the terms and conditions stated in the AVLP Note. The AVLP Note accrues interest at 10% per annum and includes a 10% original issue discount. During the year ended April 30, 2019, \$105,000 was repaid. The balance outstanding on the AVLP Note as of October 31, 2019, was \$100,915.

Between June 25, 2019 and October 31, 2019, the Company entered into subscription agreements for the purchase of 1,756,726 units at \$1.50 for each unit purchased pursuant to its 2019 private offering (the “Private Offering”). Each unit consisted of one (1) share of Common Stock and one (1) warrant to purchase one half (0.5) share of Common Stock. In aggregate, the 1,756,726 units represents 1,756,726 shares of Common Stock and 878,363 warrants with an exercise price of \$3.00 per share for an aggregate purchase price of \$2,635,089, or \$1.50 per share. The Private Offering was conducted pursuant to the terms of a Confidential Private Placement Memorandum dated June 12, 2019 (the “2019 PPM”). As of October 31, 2019, in conjunction with the 2019 PPM, the Company incurred \$395,263 in placement fees resulting in net proceeds to the Company of \$2,239,826.

## CONTRACTUAL OBLIGATIONS

On May 1, 2016, the Company entered into the License Agreement with the Licensor pursuant to which the Licensor granted the Company a royalty bearing, exclusive worldwide license, limited to the field of Alzheimer’s Immunotherapy and Diagnostics, under United States Patent No. 8,188,046, entitled “Amyloid Beta Peptides and Methods of Use”, filed April 7, 2009 and granted May 29, 2012.

In addition to royalty payments of 4% on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology, the Company was required to pay a license fee of \$100,000 on June 25, 2016, and December 31, 2016. As an additional licensing fee, the Licensor was entitled to receive that number of shares of our Common Stock equal to five percent (5%) of the sum of the total number of issued and outstanding shares plus any securities that are convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock, subject to adjustment for additional issuances until such time as the Company has received a total of \$5 million in cash in consideration for the Company’s equity securities. The Company issued 3,601,809 shares to the Licensor in full satisfaction of this additional licensing fee. Minimum royalties are \$20,000 in 2022, \$40,000 in 2023 and \$50,000 in 2024 and every year thereafter, for the life of the agreement. Additionally, the Company is required to pay milestone payments on the due dates to Licensor for the license of the technology, as follows:

Payment	Due Date	Event
\$ 50,000	Upon IND application filing	Upon IND application filing
\$ 50,000	12 months from IND application filing date	Upon first dosing of patient in first Phase I Clinical Trial
\$ 175,000	12 months from first patient dosed in Phase I	Upon Completion of first Phase I Clinical Trial
\$ 500,000	24 months from completion of first Phase I Trial	Upon Completion of first Phase II Clinical Trial
\$ 1,000,000	12 months from completion of the first Phase II Clinical Trial	Upon first patient treated in a Phase III Clinical Trial
\$ 10,000,000	7 years from the effective date of the agreement	Upon FDA BLA Approval

None of these milestones was met as of the date of this Offering Circular. If we fail to meet a milestone by its specified date, the Licensor may terminate the License Agreement.

The Licensor was also granted a preemptive right to acquire such shares or other equity securities that may be issued from time to time by the Company while Licensor remains the owner of any equity securities of the company. Further, if the Company issue equity securities at a price per share that is less than the price paid by investors in a transaction for aggregate consideration of at least \$5,000,000 (the “Investment Price”), then the number of shares owned by Licensee shall be increased upon such issuance. The amount of the increase shall be determined by multiplying the number of shares then owned by Licensor by a fraction; the numerator of which shall be equal to the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock, and the denominator of which shall be equal to the sum of (i) the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately prior to the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock plus (ii) the number of shares of Common Stock which the aggregate consideration for the total number of additional shares of Common Stock so issued would purchase at the Investment Price.

There are certain license fees and milestone payments required to be paid for the licensing of the AL001 technology, pursuant to the terms of the two Standard Exclusive License Agreements with Sublicensing Terms, both dated June 21, 2018 (the “AL001 License Agreements”), with the Licensor and the University. In addition, a royalty payment of 3% is required pursuant to License #18110 while License #18111 requires a royalty payment of 1.5% on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology. For the two AL001 licenses, in the aggregate, the Company paid initial license fees of \$200,000. As an additional licensing fee, the Licensor received that number of shares of Common Stock equal to three percent (3%) of the sum of the total number of issued and outstanding shares. The Company issued 2,227,925 shares to the Licensor in full satisfaction of this additional licensing fee. Minimum royalties are \$25,000 in 2023, \$45,000 in 2024 and \$70,000 in 2025 and every year thereafter, for the life of the agreement. Additionally, the Company is required to pay milestone payments on the due dates to Licensor for the license of the technology, as follows:

<b>Payment</b>	<b>Due Date</b>	<b>Event</b>
\$ 50,000	November 1, 2019	Pre-IND meeting
\$ 65,000	6 months from IND filing date	IND application filing
\$ 190,000	12 months from IND filing date	Upon first dosing of patient in a clinical trial
\$ 500,000	12 months from first patient dosing	Upon Completion of first clinical trial
\$ 1,250,000	12 months from completion of the first Phase II clinical trial	Upon first patient treated in a Phase III Clinical Trial
\$ 10,000,000	8 years from the Effective Date of the Agreement	Upon FDA Approval

## OUR BUSINESS

Alzamend Neuro is a company focused on the facilitation of bringing technologies to market which help with the treatment, prevention or cure of Alzheimer's.

On May 1, 2016, we obtained a royalty-bearing, exclusive worldwide license from the University of South Florida Research Foundation, Inc. (the "Licensor"), to a mutant-peptide immunotherapy that is designed to be used both as a vaccine and prophylactic against Alzheimer's. This treatment, known as AL002, has transitioned from early stage development to an extensive program of preclinical study and evaluation with an anticipated completion date at the end of June 2020. AL002 will require extensive clinical evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before it can provide us with any revenue. We plan to file an Investigational New Drug Application ("IND") with the United States Food and Drug Administration (the "FDA") with respect to AL002 in the third quarter of 2020 and prepare to conduct a Phase 1 Clinical Trial in the latter half of 2020.

On July 2, 2018, we obtained two royalty-bearing, exclusive worldwide licenses from the Licensor to a therapy known as AL001 (formerly known as LiProSal) to mitigate extreme agitation and forestall other deterioration as displayed by patients with up to moderate AD. AL001 is an ionic cocrystal of lithium and has been shown to exhibit improved nonclinical pharmacokinetics compared to current FDA-approved lithium products; it is also bioactive in many in vitro models of Alzheimer's. AL001 is expected to provide clinicians with a major improvement over current lithium-based treatments and may also constitute a means of treating Alzheimer's and other neurodegenerative diseases. Based on nonclinical data, AL001 co-crystal technology has the potential to improve the therapeutic index of lithium providing a greater bioavailability to the site of action (brain) in comparison to more traditional lithium dosage forms. Lithium has been marketed for over 35 years and human toxicology regarding lithium use has been well characterized, mitigating the potential regulatory burden for safety data. We submitted a pre-IND briefing package to the FDA in July 2019 that argued against any further preclinical safety studies. . Per the FDA response letter, we believe the proposed test parameters for AL001 appears reasonable to support a Phase 1 study, thereby allowing Alzamend to conduct human clinical trials. Post Phase III clinical trials and in order to obtain approval to commercialize AL001 via a New Drug Application ("NDA"), Alzamend has been asked to provide a scientific bridge to a listed drug to support the adequacy of the nonclinical program. Per the FDA, the adequacy of the nonclinical data will be a matter of review. If the adequacy of the nonclinical data is not sufficient for the FDA, Alzamend will then be required to conduct a clinical pharmacokinetics animal study (6-weeks study) of AL001 in order to be considered for FDA approval. We received feedback from the FDA regarding the pre-IND briefing package and have begun the process of finalizing the IND application and, while FDA approval is not guaranteed, we expect to receive approval to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects in the third quarter 2020. While the FDA has not given us any indication as to whether AL001 will receive Breakthrough Therapy designation or be permitted to use the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway, we believe that AL001 is an ideal candidate to receive both a Breakthrough Therapy designation as well as a section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for new drug approvals, enhancing the speed and reducing the regulatory burden of FDA review.

### Technology AL001

The patented solution that we have licensed and will first move to commercialization is an ionic cocrystal of lithium for the treatment of Alzheimer's and a method of preparation for other pharmaceutical and industrial purposes. Lithium salts have a long history of human consumption beginning in the 1800's. In psychiatry, they have been used to treat mania and as a prophylactic for depression since the mid-20th century. Today, lithium salts are used as a mood stabilizer for the treatment of bipolar disorder. Although the FDA has approved no medications as safe and effective treatments for suicidality, lithium has proven to be the only drug that consistently reduces suicidality in patients with neuropsychiatric disorders. Despite these effective medicinal uses, current FDA-approved lithium pharmaceuticals (lithium carbonate and lithium citrate) are limited by a narrow therapeutic window that requires regular blood monitoring of plasma lithium levels and blood chemistry by a clinician to mitigate adverse events. Because conventional lithium salts (carbonate and citrate) are eliminated relatively quickly, multiple administrations throughout the day are required to safely reach therapeutic plasma concentrations. However, existing lithium drugs such as lithium chloride and lithium carbonate suffer from chronic toxicity, poor physicochemical properties and poor brain bioavailability. Because lithium is so effective at reducing manic episodes in patients with bipolar disorder, it is still used clinically despite its narrow therapeutic index. This has led researchers to begin to look for alternatives to lithium with similar bioactivities.

The inventors from the University have developed a new lithium cocrystal composition and method of preparation that allow for lower dosages to achieve therapeutic brain levels of lithium for psychiatric disorders, broadening lithium's therapeutic index. The compound offers improved physicochemical properties compared to existing forms of lithium, giving it the potential to be developed as an anti-suicidal drug or for use against mood disorders. The formulation method may also be used for commercial/industrial applications such as green chemistry, engineering low density porous materials, pesticides/herbicides, explosives/propellants, and electronic materials.

Recent evidence suggests that lithium may be efficacious for both the treatment and prevention of Alzheimer's. Unlike traditional medications which only address a single therapeutic target, lithium appears to be neuroprotective through several modes of action. For example, it exerts neuroprotective effects, in part, by increasing a brain-derived neurotrophic factor leading to restoration of learning and memory. Another neuroprotective mechanism of lithium is attenuation of the production of inflammatory cytokines like IL-6 and nitric oxide in activated microglia. Moreover, results from recent clinical studies suggest that lithium treatment may reduce dementia development while preserving cognitive function and reducing biomarkers associated with AD.

With this in mind, the team of inventors from the University have specifically designed, synthesized and characterized the novel ionic cocrystal of lithium (known as AL001). AL001 has been shown to exhibit improved nonclinical pharmacokinetics compared to current FDA-approved lithium products, it is also bioactive in many in vitro models of Alzheimer's. AL001 is expected to provide clinicians with a major improvement over current lithium-based treatments and may also constitute a means of treating Alzheimer's and other neurodegenerative diseases.

A product can be designated as a Breakthrough Therapy designation if it is intended to treat a serious condition and preliminary clinical evidence indicates that the drug may demonstrate substantial improvement over available therapy on a clinically significant endpoint(s). A drug that receives Breakthrough Therapy designation is eligible for fast track designation features, intensive guidance on an efficient drug development program and FDA organizational commitment involving senior managers. While the FDA has not given us any indication as to whether AL001 will receive Breakthrough Therapy designation or be permitted to use the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway, we believe that AL001 is an ideal candidate to receive both a Breakthrough Therapy designation as well as a section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for new drug approvals, enhancing the speed and reducing the regulatory burden of FDA review. The Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway provides manufacturers with an opportunity to acquire FDA approval without performing all the work that's required with an NDA. Those drugs that qualify for the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway are an option for drugs with a new aspect related to indication, dosage form or regimen, strength, combination with other products, or other unique traits. If we receive approval through the 505 (b)(2) regulatory pathway AL001 is eligible for 3-5 years of market exclusivity during which period AL001 would be protected from competitors. If we successfully acquire a Breakthrough Therapy designation and the Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for new drug approvals, we believe we can receive FDA approval for AL001 in four years.

AL001 will require extensive clinical evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before it or any successors could provide us with any revenue. As a result, if we do not successfully develop, achieve regulatory approval for and commercialize AL001, our long-term business plans will not be met, and we may be unable to generate the revenue we have forecast for many years, if at all. We do not anticipate that we will generate our maximum revenue for several years, or that we will achieve profitability for this therapeutic at least a few years after generating material revenue, if at all. If we are unable to generate revenue, we may not be able to pursue any expansion of our business or acquire additional intellectual property as we have planned, we will not become profitable with this therapeutic agent, and we may be unable to continue our operations.

#### AL002

The other patented solution that we have licensed to move to commercialization is AL002, a mutant-peptide immunotherapy that is designed to be used both as a vaccine and prophylactic against Alzheimer's. This therapy is intended to work by stimulating the body's own immune system to prevent the formation and breakdown of beta amyloids, which build up in the brain to form a "plaque," and subsequently block the neurological brain signals, ultimately leading to the symptoms and onset of Alzheimer's. Immunotherapy is the treatment of disease by inducing, enhancing, or suppressing an immune response. Immunotherapies that are designed to elicit or amplify an immune response are classified as activation immunotherapies, whereas immunotherapies that reduce or suppress are classified as suppression immunotherapies. We believe that strategies to strengthen the immune system in the elderly, who are most susceptible to the development of Alzheimer's, could greatly enhance the effectiveness of immune-based approaches against Alzheimer's. Our novel immune-based methodology attempts to inhibit the natural process of immunological aging by restoring the balance of the immune system through immunomodulation.

Beta amyloid protein has been directly linked to Alzheimer's and the associated neurofibrillary tangles formation seen in Alzheimer's patients. Specifically, increased levels of extracellular plaques in the brain composed of amyloid beta peptide 1-42 are seen in Alzheimer's patients when compared to healthy people. In a healthy brain, protein fragments such as amyloid beta peptide 1-42 are broken down and eliminated. However, in Alzheimer's, the fragments accumulate to form hard, insoluble plaques. Attempts have been made to help inhibit plaque formation by reducing the amount of amyloid beta peptide 1-42 through vaccines that generate an immune response to the protein. The challenge has been that though effective in reducing the amount of the protein, the inflammatory response has been such that the intended benefits are not seen. These vaccines have used an adjuvant, or helper, to generate the necessary immune response and it is believed that this adjuvant triggers the unwanted surplus inflammation. We have licensed rights to a vaccine using autologous cells that does not require an adjuvant and therefore, we believe will trigger the immune response, which should help eliminate the amyloid beta peptide 1-42 without generating the excess inflammation and therefore, have a positive clinical effect. We believe that the vaccine, in addition to dealing with plaque formation, also ameliorates the impaired immune system that is thought to be the major issue in Alzheimer's patients.

Our data have demonstrated that these mutant-peptide sensitized dendritic cells ("DC") can act as a vaccine to generate a durable antibody response, as well as enhance the number of CD8+ T-cells and increase the lifespan of CD8+ cells (T and DCs cells), compared to control subjects. These studies will provide a further rationale and impetus for using this novel vaccine to determine potential efficacy in human clinical trials against Alzheimer's.

AL002 has been researched for more than ten (10) years and we are currently in the midst of completing its preclinical development and have begun both the pre-IND and IND application process to the FDA, which is managed by TAMM Net, Inc., an experienced and highly-regarded regulatory consultancy firm. In November 2018, we began a toxicological preclinical study for AL002 with CRL in compliance with FDA requirements. Upon conclusion of this toxicological study, anticipated to occur in the second quarter of 2020, we expect to begin the process of finalizing the IND application process and move quickly forward to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects. AL002 will require extensive clinical evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before it and any successors could provide us with any revenue. As a result, if we do not successfully develop, achieve regulatory approval for and commercialize AL002, our long-term business plans will not be met, and we may be unable to generate the revenue we have forecast for AL002 for many years, if at all. We do not anticipate that we will generate our maximum revenue for several years, or that we will achieve profitability for this therapeutic at least a few years after generating material revenue, if at all. If we are unable to generate revenue, we may not be able to pursue any expansion of our business or acquire additional intellectual property as we have planned, we will not become profitable with this therapeutic agent, and we may be unable to continue our operations.

### Market

Currently, Alzheimer's is the 6<sup>th</sup> leading cause of death in the U.S. and when extrapolated globally, the market for preventions, treatments, and cures of this crippling disease is massive. The Alzheimer's Association estimates that the cost of caring for people with Alzheimer's and other dementias will reach \$290 billion in 2019 and that by 2050, these costs may rise as high as \$1.1 trillion. Since 1990, life expectancy has increased by 6 years and the worldwide average continues to increase. With the increase in the mean age of the population in developed countries, the prevalence of deteriorating neurological diseases has also increased. According to the Alzheimer's Association, in the United States alone, 1 in 10 persons over the age of 65 have Alzheimer's, with more than 5.8 million Americans living with it. It is estimated that this number will increase to more than 14 million by 2050 if a cure is not found. Many Alzheimer's related associations believe the actual number of adults with AD may be as much as 5 times more or 30 million since current statistics do not take into account deaths from complications or from related diseases like pneumonia or heart attack. These death certificates only list the most immediate cause. The fastest growing age group in the United States is the "over 85" group within which 1 in 3 individuals have Alzheimer's. Women are 2½ times more likely to die from Alzheimer's than from cancer.

The rate of deaths related to Alzheimer's increased by 54.5 percent over 15 years, according to a report issued on May 27, 2017, by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. There were 93,541 deaths related to Alzheimer's in 2014, a rate of 25.4 deaths per 100,000 people, up from 44,536 deaths in 1999, a rate of 16.5 deaths per 100,000 people, according to the report. The disease currently affects an estimated 5.8 million people in the U.S., but that number is expected to rise dramatically in people over the age of 65 to 14 million in 2050. The researchers examined death certificate data from the National Vital Statistics System to reach their findings.

Every 65 seconds, someone in the United States develops AD. Of the 10 most fatal diseases in the United States, Alzheimer's is the only one with no cure, no known way of deceleration and no known means of prevention. Alzamend was formed to commercialize patented intellectual property in this space, by funding it from its present state through human clinical trials administered by the FDA and ultimately, if successful, potentially make it available to the global market.

### Business Plans

Our plan of operations is currently focused on the development of both our therapeutic candidates, which are at different stages in development. We have begun the process of finalizing the IND application for AL001 and expect to receive approval to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects in the third quarter 2020.

In November 2018, we began a toxicological preclinical study for AL002 with CRL in compliance with FDA requirements. Upon conclusion of this toxicological study, anticipated to occur in the second quarter of 2020, we expect to begin the process of finalizing the IND application process and move quickly forward to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects during the latter half of 2020.

We engaged Emory University, located in Atlanta, Georgia, to develop and plan the Phase 1 Clinical Trial protocols, processes and plan. Dr. Ihab Hajjar, Neurologist at the Emory Clinic, has been selected to be the Lead Investigator for this set of clinical activities. We have also retained a division of the international Swiss manufacturer, Lonza, to develop the manufacturing protocols, processes and procedures. Lonza is the worldwide leader in producing immunological proprietary and contracted pharma solutions. We anticipate selecting Emory University as the host for the Phase 1 Clinical Trial, which will be led by Dr. Hajjar at the Emory Clinic.

In November 2018, we adopted a Charter for our Scientific Advisory Board ("SAB") and have announced the appointment of two SAB members, Dr. Thomas Wisniewski (Director of the NYU Pearl Barlow Center for Memory Evaluation and Treatment) and Dr. Eric McDade (Associate Director of the Dominantly Inherited Alzheimer Network Trials Unit (DIAN-TU)). The SAB members have clinical specializations, including extensive experience with AD and other neurological diseases. We intend to rely on these experts to help guide our therapies through the related scientific and manufacturing initiatives.

The continuation of our current plan of operations to completing our IND application and beginning the series of human clinical trials for each of our therapeutics requires us to promptly raise significant additional capital. If we are successful in raising capital, we believe that we will have sufficient cash resources to fund our operations.

Because our working capital requirements depend upon numerous factors, including the progress of our preclinical and clinical testing, timing and cost of obtaining regulatory approvals, changes in levels of resources that we devote to the development of manufacturing and marketing capabilities, competitive and technological advances, status of competitors, and our ability to establish collaborative arrangements with other organizations, we will require additional financing to fund future operations.

#### *FDA consulting and active project planning management*

We have retained TAMM Net, Inc., an experienced and highly-regarded regulatory consultancy firm based in Georgia for project management. In this capacity, TAMM Net will lead, develop and manage our preclinical and clinical efforts, extending from the current status of each product candidate through the exit or commercialization of the technologies that we have licensed. We may retain an experienced Canadian and European Union consulting firm to commercialize these same technologies for these geographic markets.

#### *Funding new AD research and acquisition of licenses to treat or cure AD*

We have committed to funding new research projects from Dr. Chuanhai Cao, the neuroscientist who developed AL002, and his medical team for up to the next three years or more.

We obtained two royalty-bearing, exclusive worldwide licenses from the Licensor, originally called LisPro, now given the name of AL001 for regulatory and company confidentiality, a cocrystal biologic therapy intended to mitigate extreme agitation and forestall further deterioration of memory as displayed by patients with up to moderate AD effective as of July 2, 2018.

We are dedicated to acquiring and supporting new research to treat or cure AD and intend to evaluate and pursue each opportunity as it may arise.

### **Our Product Candidates**

#### **AL001**

The patented solution that we have licensed and will first move to commercialization is an ionic cocrystal of lithium for the treatment of Alzheimer's and a method of preparation for other pharmaceutical and industrial purposes. Lithium salts have a long history of human consumption beginning in the 1800's. In psychiatry, they have been used to treat mania and as a prophylactic for depression since the mid-20th century. Today, lithium salts are used as a mood stabilizer for the treatment of bipolar disorder. Although the FDA has approved no medications as safe and effective treatments for suicidality, lithium has proven to be the only drug that consistently reduces suicidality in patients with neuropsychiatric disorders. Despite these effective medicinal uses, current FDA-approved lithium pharmaceuticals (lithium carbonate and lithium citrate) are limited by a narrow therapeutic window that requires regular blood monitoring of plasma lithium levels and blood chemistry by a clinician to mitigate adverse events. Because conventional lithium salts (carbonate and citrate) are eliminated relatively quickly, multiple administrations throughout the day are required to safely reach therapeutic plasma concentrations. However, existing lithium drugs such as lithium chloride and lithium carbonate suffer from chronic toxicity, poor physicochemical properties and poor brain bioavailability. Because lithium is so effective at reducing manic episodes in patients with bipolar disorder, it is still used clinically despite its narrow therapeutic index. This has led researchers to begin to look for alternatives to lithium with similar bioactivities.

The inventors from the University have developed a new lithium cocrystal composition and method of preparation that allow for lower dosages to achieve therapeutic brain levels of lithium for psychiatric disorders, broadening lithium's therapeutic index. The compound offers improved physicochemical properties compared to existing forms of lithium, giving it the potential to be developed as an anti-suicidal drug or for use against mood disorders. The formulation method may also be used for commercial/industrial applications such as green chemistry, engineering low density porous materials, pesticides/herbicides, explosives/propellants, and electronic materials.

Recent evidence suggests that lithium may be efficacious for both the treatment and prevention of Alzheimer's. Unlike traditional medications which only address a single therapeutic target, lithium appears to be neuroprotective through several modes of action. For example, it exerts neuroprotective effects, in part, by increasing a brain-derived neurotrophic factor leading to restoration of learning and memory. Another neuroprotective mechanism of lithium is attenuation of the production of inflammatory cytokines like IL-6 and nitric oxide in activated microglia. Moreover, recent clinical studies suggest that lithium treatment may reduce dementia development while preserving cognitive function and reducing biomarkers associated with AD.



With this in mind, the team of inventors from the University have specifically designed, synthesized and characterized the novel ionic cocrystal of lithium (known as AL001). AL001 has been shown to exhibit improved nonclinical pharmacokinetics compared to current FDA-approved lithium products, it is also bioactive in many in vitro models of Alzheimer's. AL001 is expected to provide clinicians with a major improvement over current lithium-based treatments and may also constitute a means of treating Alzheimer's and other neurodegenerative diseases. Based on nonclinical data, AL001 co-crystal technology has the potential to improve the therapeutic index of lithium providing a greater bioavailability to the site of action (brain) in comparison to more traditional lithium dosage forms. Lithium has been marketed for over 35 years and human toxicology regarding lithium use has been well characterized, mitigating the potential regulatory burden for safety data. We submitted a pre-IND briefing package to the FDA in July 2019 that argued against any further preclinical safety studies. . Per the FDA response letter, we believe the proposed test parameters for AL001 appears reasonable to support a Phase 1 study, thereby allowing Alzamend to conduct human clinical trials. Post Phase III clinical trials and in order to obtain approval to commercialize AL001 via a New Drug Application ("NDA"), Alzamend has been asked to provide a scientific bridge to a listed drug to support the adequacy of the nonclinical program. Per the FDA, the adequacy of the nonclinical data will be a matter of review. If the adequacy of the nonclinical data is not sufficient for the FDA, Alzamend will then be required to conduct a clinical pharmacokinetics animal study (6-weeks study) of AL001 in order to be considered for FDA approval. We received feedback from the FDA regarding the pre-IND briefing package and have begun the process of finalizing the IND application and, while FDA approval is not guaranteed, we expect to receive approval to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects in the third quarter 2020. While the FDA has not given us any indication as to whether AL001 will receive Breakthrough Therapy designation or be permitted to use the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway, we believe that AL001 is an ideal candidate to receive both a Breakthrough Therapy designation as well as a section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for new drug approvals, enhancing the speed and reducing the regulatory burden of FDA review.

A product can be designated as a Breakthrough Therapy designation if it is intended to treat a serious condition and preliminary clinical evidence indicates that the drug may demonstrate substantial improvement over available therapy on a clinically significant endpoint(s). A drug that receives Breakthrough Therapy designation is eligible for fast track designation features, intensive guidance on an efficient drug development program and FDA organizational commitment involving senior managers. We further believe that AL001 is ideally situated for Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for new drug approvals. The Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway provides manufacturers with an opportunity to acquire FDA approval without performing all the work that's required with an NDA. Those drugs that qualify for the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway are an option for drugs with a new aspect related to indication, dosage form or regimen, strength, combination with other products, or other unique traits. If we receive approval through the 505 (b)(2) regulatory pathway AL001 is eligible for 3-5 years of market exclusivity during which period AL001 would be protected from competitors. If we successfully acquire a Breakthrough Therapy designation and the Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for new drug approvals, we believe we can receive FDA approval for AL001 in four years.

AL001 will require extensive clinical evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before it or any successors could provide us with any revenue. As a result, if we do not successfully develop, achieve regulatory approval for and commercialize AL001, our long-term business plans will not be met, and we may be unable to generate the revenue we have forecast for many years, if at all. We do not anticipate that we will generate our maximum revenue for several years, or that we will achieve profitability for this therapeutic at least a few years after generating material revenue, if at all. If we are unable to generate revenue, we may not be able to pursue any expansion of our business or acquire additional intellectual property as we have planned, we will not become profitable with this therapeutic agent, and we may be unable to continue our operations.

#### AL002

The other patented solution that we have licensed to move to commercialization is AL002, a mutant-peptide immunotherapy that is designed to be used both as a vaccine and prophylactic against Alzheimer's. This therapy is intended to work by stimulating the body's own immune system to prevent the formation and breakdown of beta amyloids, which build up in the brain to form a "plaque," and subsequently block the neurological brain signals, ultimately leading to the symptoms and onset of Alzheimer's. Immunotherapy is the treatment of disease by inducing, enhancing, or suppressing an immune response. Immunotherapies that are designed to elicit or amplify an immune response are classified as activation immunotherapies, whereas immunotherapies that reduce or suppress are classified as suppression immunotherapies. We believe that strategies to strengthen the immune system in the elderly, who are most susceptible to the development of Alzheimer's, could greatly enhance the effectiveness of immune-based approaches against Alzheimer's. Our novel immune-based methodology attempts to inhibit the natural process of immunological aging by restoring the balance of the immune system through immunomodulation.

Beta amyloid protein has been directly linked to Alzheimer's and the associated neurofibrillary tangles formation seen in Alzheimer's patients. Specifically, increased levels of extracellular plaques in the brain composed of amyloid beta peptide 1-42 are seen in Alzheimer's patients when compared to healthy people. In a healthy brain, protein fragments such as amyloid beta peptide 1-42 are broken down and eliminated. However, in Alzheimer's, the fragments accumulate to form hard, insoluble plaques. Attempts have been made to help inhibit plaque formation by reducing the amount of amyloid beta peptide 1-42 through vaccines that generate an immune response to the protein. The challenge has been that though effective in reducing the amount of the protein, the inflammatory response has been such that the intended benefits are not seen. These vaccines have used an adjuvant, or helper, to generate the necessary immune response and it is believed that this adjuvant triggers the unwanted surplus inflammation. We have licensed rights to a vaccine using autologous cells that does not require an adjuvant and therefore, we believe will trigger the immune response, which should help eliminate the amyloid beta peptide 1-42 without generating the excess inflammation and therefore, have a positive clinical effect. We believe that the vaccine, in addition to dealing with plaque formation, also ameliorates the impaired immune system that is thought to be the major issue in Alzheimer's patients.

Our data have demonstrated that these mutant-peptide sensitized dendritic cells (“DC”) can act as a vaccine to generate a durable antibody response, as well as enhance the number of CD8+ T-cells and increase the lifespan of CD8+ cells (T and DCs cells), compared to control subjects. These studies will provide a further rationale and impetus for using this novel vaccine to determine potential efficacy in human clinical trials against Alzheimer’s.

AL002 has been researched for more than ten (10) years and we are currently in the midst of completing its preclinical development and have begun both the pre-IND and IND application process to the FDA, which is managed by TAMM Net, Inc., an experienced and highly-regarded regulatory consultancy firm. In November 2018, we began a toxicological preclinical study for AL002 with CRL in compliance with FDA requirements. Upon conclusion of this toxicological study, anticipated to occur in the second quarter of 2020, we expect to begin the process of finalizing the IND application process and move quickly forward to begin a Phase 1 Clinical Trial with human subjects. AL002 will require extensive clinical evaluation, regulatory review and approval, significant marketing efforts and substantial investment before it and any successors could provide us with any revenue. As a result, if we do not successfully develop, achieve regulatory approval for and commercialize AL002, our long-term business plans will not be met, and we may be unable to generate the revenue we have forecast for AL002 for many years, if at all. We do not anticipate that we will generate our maximum revenue for several years, or that we will achieve profitability for this therapeutic at least a few years after generating material revenue, if at all. If we are unable to generate revenue, we may not be able to pursue any expansion of our business or acquire additional intellectual property as we have planned, we will not become profitable with this therapeutic agent, and we may be unable to continue our operations.

## Our Science

Therapeutic Drug	Synopsis	Strength	Status
AL001	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use of patented Ionic Cocrystal (ICC) technology delivering a therapeutic combination of Lithium, Proline, and Salicylate</li> <li>Lithium as a treatment of agitation and other possible symptoms in patients with indication of Alzheimer’s disease</li> <li>Other potential indications: Dementia, Parkinson’s Disease, ALS, Depression, Bi-Polar Disorder, Mania, Post Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD), Suicidality, etc.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exclusive license for Cocrystal delivery system for AD and psychiatric indications</li> <li>Eligible for “breakthrough therapy” designation from FDA</li> <li>Seeking a 505(b)(2) clinical trial pathway from FDA</li> <li>Formulation may importantly expand the range of therapeutic categories amenable to lithium treatments, with enhanced safety</li> <li>Has the potential of becoming the replacement for all lithium therapy on the market</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Filed Pre-IND in Q3, 2019</li> <li>Filing IND in Q3, 2020</li> <li>Commencing Phase 1 human clinical trials in Q3, 2020</li> </ul>
AL002	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A patented method using a mutant peptide sensitized cell as a cell-based therapeutic vaccine that reduces beta-amyloid plaque and seeks to restore the ability of the patient’s immunological system to combat Alzheimer’s disease.</li> <li>Also seeks to mitigate adverse reactions from a patient’s immunological system experienced during pre-clinical trials including the highly publicized Elan study (AN-1772)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adjuvant-free therapeutic vaccine designed for the treatment and prophylactics of AD</li> <li>Difficult to manufacture and hence not easily replicated by competitors</li> <li>Eligible for “breakthrough therapy” status via FDA</li> <li>Antibody responses induced after one inoculation (Pre-Clinical) and lasted for 4 months</li> <li>Inflammation cytokines like IL1 and TNF.alpha, which are considered being related to inflammation didn't increase with antibody level increase</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Completing pre-clinical studies Q4, 2019</li> <li>Filing IND in Q2, 2020</li> <li>Commencing Phase 1 human clinical trials in Q3, 2020</li> </ul>

## Market Opportunity

The Alzheimer’s Association estimates that the cost of caring for people with Alzheimer’s will reach \$290 billion dollars in 2019 and by 2050, these costs may rise as high as \$1.1 trillion. Currently, Alzheimer’s is the 6<sup>th</sup> leading cause of death in the U.S. and when extrapolated globally, the market for preventions, treatments, and cures of this crippling disease is massive. Alzamend Neuro was formed to develop and commercialize patented intellectual property/treatments for Alzheimer’s, by funding it from pre-clinical through FDA Clinical Trials and ultimately, if successful, make it available to the global market. Additionally, we are supporting ongoing research at the USF Health College of Medicine and plan to support others with first rights of refusal on technologies for treating terminal diseases.

In an article jointly issued on April 8, 2016, Allergan and Heptares cited currently significant unmet medical needs and a heavy economic burden caused by cognitive impairment and dementia across multiple diseases, noting that currently available drugs for treating Alzheimer's provide limited and transient effects on cognition. They cited projections of healthcare costs, including nursing home care, associated with Alzheimer's and dementia (currently estimated to be in excess of \$640 billion for North America, Western Europe, and Asia-Pacific), that are continuing to grow based on data from the World Health Organization, Alzheimer's International, the National Institute of Mental Health, and the Lewy Body Dementia Association.

This medical shortfall puts a spotlight on an urgent need for development of new therapies capable of treating the estimated more than 45 million people worldwide suffering from Alzheimer's today - 5.8 million in North America, 7.5 million in Western Europe, and 3.6 million in Asia-Pacific - a number expected to increase to more than 130 million by 2050. Alzheimer's is the most common cause of dementia, estimated to be associated with some 60 to 70 percent of cases. An additional estimated 1.4 million patients in the U.S. suffer from Lewy body dementia. The potential marketplace for a commercialized therapy or treatment would be tremendously significant with large financial support available from numerous national and international pharmaceutical companies and various governments and worldwide agencies.

These statistics were recently affirmed domestically in an article regarding the death rate and pervasiveness of Alzheimer's. The rate of deaths related to Alzheimer's jumped by 54.5 percent over 15 years, according to a report issued on May 27, 2017 from the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. There were 93,541 deaths related to Alzheimer's in 2014, a rate of 25.4 deaths per 100,000 people, up from 44,536 deaths in 1999, a rate of 16.5 deaths per 100,000 people, according to the report. The disease currently affects an estimated 5.8 million people in the U.S., but that number is expected to rise dramatically in people over the age of 65 to 14 million in 2050. The researchers examined death certificate data from the National Vital Statistics System to reach their findings.

## **Manufacturing**

We do not have any in-house manufacturing capabilities. We intend to outsource the manufacturing of our products to third party contractors, with special capabilities to manufacture chemical drugs and biologic drug candidates for submission and clinical testing under FDA guidelines. We believe there are several sources of manufacturing available once a therapy or treatment can achieve Phase 2 study.

For AL001 and AL002 we have selected the worldwide leader and authority in the manufacturing of immunological peptides, Lonza, which is a Swiss multinational, chemicals and biotechnology company, headquartered in Basel, Switzerland, with major facilities in Europe, North America and South Asia. Lonza was established in the late 19th-century in Switzerland. Lonza provides product development services to the pharmaceutical and biologic industries, including organic, fine and performance chemicals, custom manufacturing of biopharmaceuticals, chemical synthesis capabilities, detection systems and services for the bioscience sector.

## **Distribution & Marketing**

We intend to develop AL001 and AL002 through successive de-risking milestones towards regulatory approval and seek marketing approval of AL001 and AL002, or effect partnering transactions with biopharmaceutical companies seeking to strategically fortify pipelines and fund the costly later-stage clinical development required to achieve successful commercialization. We do not anticipate selling products directly into the marketplace, although we may do so depending on market conditions. Our focus is to strategically effect partnering transactions which will provide distribution and marketing capabilities to sell products into the marketplace.

## **Government Regulation**

Clinical trials, the pharmaceutical approval process, and the marketing of pharmaceutical products, are intensively regulated in the U.S. and in all major foreign countries.

### Human Health Product Regulation in the U.S.

In the U.S., the FDA regulates pharmaceuticals under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and related regulations. Pharmaceuticals are also subject to other federal, state, and local statutes and regulations. Failure to comply with applicable U.S. regulatory requirements at any time during the product development process, approval process or after approval may subject an applicant to administrative or judicial sanctions. These sanctions could include the imposition by the FDA of an Institutional Review Board ("IRB"), a clinical hold on trials, a refusal to approve pending applications, withdrawal of an approval, warning letters, product recalls, product seizures, total or partial suspension of production or distribution, injunctions, fines, civil penalties or criminal prosecution. Any agency or judicial enforcement action could have a material adverse effect on us.

The FDA and comparable regulatory agencies in state and local jurisdictions impose substantial requirements upon the clinical development, manufacture and marketing of pharmaceutical products. These agencies and other federal, state and local entities regulate research and development activities and the testing, manufacture, quality control, safety, effectiveness, labeling, storage, distribution, record keeping, approval, advertising and promotion of our products.

The FDA's policies may change, and additional government regulations may be enacted that could prevent or delay regulatory approval of new disease indications or label changes. We cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of adverse governmental regulation that might arise from future legislative or administrative action, either in the U.S. or elsewhere.

#### Marketing Approval

The process required by the FDA before human health care pharmaceuticals may be marketed in the U.S. generally involves the following:

- nonclinical laboratory and, at times, animal tests;
- adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials to establish the safety and efficacy of the proposed drug for its intended use or uses;
- pre-approval inspection of manufacturing facilities and clinical trial sites; and
- FDA approval of a Biologics License Application ("**BLA**"), which must occur before a drug can be marketed or sold.

We will need to successfully complete extensive clinical trials in order to be in a position to submit a BLA or NDA to the FDA. We must reach agreement with the FDA on the proposed protocols for our future clinical trials in the U.S. A separate submission to the FDA must be made for each successive clinical trial to be conducted during product development. Further, an independent IRB for each site proposing to conduct the clinical trial must review and approve the plan for any clinical trial before it commences at that site, and an informed consent must also be obtained from each study subject. Regulatory authorities, a data safety monitoring board or the sponsor, may suspend or terminate a clinical trial at any time on numerous grounds.

For purposes of BLA or NDA approval for human health products, human clinical trials are typically conducted in phases that may overlap.

- Phase I. The drug is initially introduced into healthy human subjects and tested for safety, dosage tolerance, absorption, metabolism, distribution and excretion. In the case of some products for severe or life-threatening diseases, especially when the product may be too inherently toxic to ethically administer to healthy volunteers, the initial human testing is often conducted in patients.
- Phase II. This phase involves trials in a limited subject population to identify possible adverse effects and safety risks, to preliminarily evaluate the efficacy of the product for specific targeted diseases and to determine dosage tolerance and optimal dosage. Phase II studies may be sub-categorized to Phase IIa studies which are smaller, pilot studies to evaluate limited drug exposure and efficacy signals, and Phase IIb studies which are larger studies testing both safety and efficacy more rigorously.
- Phase III. This phase involves trials undertaken to further evaluate dosage, clinical efficacy and safety in an expanded subject population, often at geographically dispersed clinical trial sites. These trials are intended to establish the overall risk/benefit ratio of the product and provide an adequate basis for product labeling.

All of these trials must be conducted in accordance with Good Clinical Practice ("**GCP**") requirements in order for the data to be considered reliable for regulatory purposes.

#### New Drug and Biologics License Applications

In order to obtain approval to market a pharmaceutical in the U.S., a marketing application must be submitted to the FDA that provides data establishing to the FDA's satisfaction the safety and effectiveness of the investigational drug for the proposed indication. Each NDA or BLA submission requires a substantial user fee payment unless a waiver or exemption applies (such as with the Orphan Drug Designation discussed below). The NDA or BLA submission fee currently exceeds \$1,958,000, and the manufacturer and/or sponsor under an approved NDA or BLA are also subject to annual product and establishment user fees, currently exceeding \$98,000 per product and \$526,000 per establishment. These fees are typically increased annually. The NDA or BLA includes all relevant data available from pertinent non-clinical studies and clinical trials, including negative or ambiguous results as well as positive findings, together with detailed information relating to the product's chemistry, manufacturing, controls and proposed labeling, among other things. Data can come from company-sponsored clinical trials intended to test the safety and effectiveness of a use of a product, or from a number of alternative sources, including studies initiated by investigators.

The FDA will initially review the NDA or BLA for completeness before it accepts it for filing. The FDA has 60 days from its receipt of an NDA or BLA to determine whether the application will be accepted for filing based on the agency's threshold determination that the application is sufficiently complete to permit substantive review. After the NDA or BLA submission is accepted for filing, the FDA reviews the NDA or BLA to determine, among other things, whether the proposed product is safe and effective for its intended use, and whether the product is being manufactured in accordance with current Good Manufacturing Practices ("cGMP") to assure and preserve the product's identity, strength, quality and purity. The FDA may refer applications for novel drug products or drug products that present difficult questions of safety or efficacy to an advisory committee, typically a panel that includes clinicians and other experts, for review, evaluation and a recommendation as to whether the application should be approved and, if so, under what conditions. The FDA is not bound by the recommendations of an advisory committee, but it considers such recommendations carefully when making decisions.

Based on pivotal Phase III trial results submitted in an NDA or BLA, upon the request of an applicant, the FDA may grant a Priority Review designation to a product, which sets the target date for FDA action on the application at six to eight months, rather than the standard ten to twelve months. The FDA can extend these reviews by three months. Priority Review is given where preliminary estimates indicate that a product, if approved, has the potential to provide a significant improvement compared to marketed products or offers a therapy where no satisfactory alternative therapy exists. Priority Review designation does not change the scientific/medical standard for approval or the quality of evidence necessary to support approval.

After the FDA completes its initial review of an NDA or BLA, it will communicate to the sponsor that the drug will either be approved, or it will issue a complete response letter to communicate that the NDA or BLA will not be approved in its current form and inform the sponsor of changes that must be made or additional clinical, nonclinical or manufacturing data that must be received before the application can be approved, with no implication regarding the ultimate approvability of the application.

Before approving an NDA or BLA, the FDA will inspect the facilities at which the product is manufactured, even if such facilities are located overseas. The FDA will not approve the product unless it determines that the manufacturing processes and facilities are in compliance with cGMP requirements and adequate to assure consistent production of the product within required specifications.

Additionally, before approving an NDA or BLA, the FDA may inspect one or more clinical sites to assure compliance with GCP. If the FDA determines that any of the application, manufacturing process or manufacturing facilities is not acceptable, it typically will outline the deficiencies and often will request additional testing or information. This may significantly delay further review of the application. If the FDA finds that a clinical site did not conduct the clinical trial in accordance with GCP, the FDA may determine that the data generated by the clinical site should be excluded from the primary efficacy analyses provided in the NDA or BLA. Additionally, notwithstanding the submission of any requested additional information, the FDA ultimately may decide that the application does not satisfy the regulatory criteria for approval.

The testing and approval process for a drug requires substantial time, effort and financial resources, and this process may take up to several years to complete. Data obtained from clinical activities are not always conclusive and may be susceptible to varying interpretations, which could delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. The FDA may not grant approval on a timely basis, or at all. We may encounter difficulties or unanticipated costs in our efforts to secure necessary governmental approvals, which could delay or preclude us from marketing our products.

The FDA may require, or companies may pursue, additional clinical trials after a product is approved. These so-called Phase IV studies may be made a condition to be satisfied for continuing drug approval. The results of Phase IV studies can confirm the effectiveness of a product candidate and can provide important safety information. In addition, the FDA now has express statutory authority to require sponsors to conduct post-market studies to specifically address safety issues identified by the agency. Any approvals that we may ultimately receive could be withdrawn if required post-marketing trials or analyses do not meet the FDA requirements, which could materially harm the commercial prospects for AL001 or AL002.

The FDA also has authority to require a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy ("REMS") from manufacturers to ensure that the benefits of a drug or biological product outweigh its risks. A sponsor may also voluntarily propose a REMS as part of the NDA or BLA submission. The need for a REMS is determined as part of the review of the NDA or BLA. Based on statutory standards, elements of a REMS may include "dear doctor letters," a medication guide, more elaborate targeted educational programs, and in some cases restrictions on distribution. These elements are negotiated as part of the NDA or BLA approval, and in some cases if consensus is not obtained until after the Prescription Drug User Fee Act review cycle, the approval date may be delayed. Once adopted, REMS are subject to periodic assessment and modification.

Even if AL001 or AL002 receive regulatory approval, the approval may be limited to specific disease states, patient populations and dosages, or might contain significant limitations on use in the form of warnings, precautions or contraindications, or in the form of onerous risk management plans, restrictions on distribution, or post-marketing study requirements. Further, even after regulatory approval is obtained, later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product may result in restrictions on the product or even complete withdrawal of the product from the market. Any delay in obtaining, or failure to obtain, regulatory approval for AL001 or AL002, or obtaining approval only for significantly limited use, would harm our business. In addition, we cannot predict what adverse governmental regulations may arise from future U.S. or foreign governmental action.

#### Disclosure of Clinical Trial Information

Sponsors of clinical trials of certain FDA-regulated products, including prescription drugs, are required to register and disclose certain clinical trial information on a public website maintained by the U.S. National Institutes of Health. Information related to the product, patient population, phase of investigation, study sites and investigator, and other aspects of the clinical trial is made public as part of the registration. Sponsors are also obligated to disclose the results of these trials after completion. Disclosure of the results of these trials can be delayed until the product or new indication being studied has been approved. Competitors may use this publicly-available information to gain knowledge regarding the design and progress of our development programs.

#### The Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act

The Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act, also known as the Hatch-Waxman Act, requires pharmaceutical companies to divulge certain information regarding their products which has the effect of making it easier for other companies to manufacture generic drugs to compete with those products.

*Patent Term Extension.* After an NDA or BLA approval, owners of relevant drug patents may apply for up to a five-year patent extension. The allowable patent term extension is calculated as half of the drug's testing phase - the time between IND submission and NDA or BLA submission - and all of the review phase - the time between either NDA or BLA submission and approval up to a maximum of five years. The time can be shortened if FDA determines that the applicant did not pursue approval with due diligence. The total patent term after the extension may not exceed 14 years.

For patents that might expire during the application phase, the patent owner may request an interim patent extension. An interim patent extension increases the patent term by one year and may be renewed up to four times. For each interim patent extension granted, the post-approval patent extension is reduced by one year. The director of the PTO must determine that approval of the drug covered by the patent for which a patent extension is being sought is likely. Interim patent extensions are not available for a drug for which an NDA or BLA has not been submitted.

*Environmental Regulations.* The U.S. generally requires an environmental assessment, which discusses a company's proposed action, possible alternatives to the action, and whether the further analysis of an environmental impact statement is necessary. Certain exemptions are available from the requirement to perform an environmental assessment and an environmental impact statement. Once an exemption is claimed, a company must state to the FDA that no extraordinary circumstances exist that may significantly affect the environment. We may claim an exemption, under the category for biologic products, from the requirement to provide an environmental assessment and an environmental impact statement for AL001 or AL002 and may furthermore state to the FDA that to our knowledge, no extraordinary circumstances exist that would significantly affect the environment.

#### FDA Post-Approval Requirements

Following the approval of an NDA or BLA, the FDA continues to require adverse event reporting and submission of periodic reports. The FDA also may require post-marketing testing, known as Phase IV testing, REMS, and surveillance to monitor the effects of an approved product, or the FDA may place conditions on an approval that could restrict the distribution or use of the product. In addition, quality control, drug manufacture, packaging, and labeling procedures must continue to conform to cGMP after approval. Drug manufacturers and certain of their subcontractors are required to register their establishments with FDA and certain state agencies. Registration with the FDA subjects entities to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA, during which the agency inspects manufacturing facilities to assess compliance with cGMP. Accordingly, manufacturers must continue to expend time, money and effort in the areas of production and quality control to maintain compliance with cGMP. Regulatory authorities may withdraw product approvals or request product recalls if a company fails to comply with regulatory standards, if it encounters problems following initial marketing, or if previously unrecognized problems are subsequently discovered.

#### Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act

In March 2010, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Affordability Reconciliation Act (collectively, the "**ACA**"), which includes measures that have significantly changed the way health care is financed by both governmental and private insurers, became law in the U.S. The ACA is a sweeping measure intended to expand health care coverage within the U.S., primarily through the imposition of health insurance mandates on employers and individuals and expansion of the Medicaid program. The ACA has significantly impacted the pharmaceutical industry. The ACA requires discounts under the Medicare drug benefit program and increased rebates on drugs covered by Medicaid. In addition, the ACA imposes an annual fee, which increases annually, on sales by branded pharmaceutical manufacturers. At this time, the financial impact of these discounts, increased rebates and fees and the other provisions of the ACA on our business are unclear. However, the fees, discounts and other provisions of this law are expected to have a significant negative effect on the profitability of pharmaceuticals.

## Human Health Product Regulation in the European Union

In addition to regulations in the U.S., we may eventually be subject, either directly or through our distribution partners, to a variety of regulations in other jurisdictions governing, among other things, clinical trials and any commercial sales and distribution of our products, if approved.

Whether or not we obtain FDA approval for a product, we must obtain the requisite approvals from regulatory authorities in non-U.S. countries prior to the commencement of clinical trials or marketing of the product in those countries. Certain countries outside of the U.S. have a process that requires the submission of a clinical trial application prior to the commencement of human clinical trials. In Europe, for example, a Clinical Trial Application (“CTA”) must be submitted to the competent national health authority and to independent ethics committees in each country in which a company intends to conduct clinical trials. Once the CTA is approved in accordance with a country’s requirements, clinical trial development may proceed in that country.

The requirements and process governing the conduct of clinical trials, product licensing, pricing and reimbursement vary from country to country, even though there is already some degree of legal harmonization in the EU Member States resulting from the national implementation of underlying EU legislation. In all cases, the clinical trials are conducted in accordance with GCP and other applicable regulatory requirements.

To obtain regulatory approval of an investigational drug under EU regulatory systems, we must submit a marketing authorization application. This application is similar to the BLA in the U.S., with the exception of, among other things, country-specific document requirements. Drugs can be authorized in the EU by using (i) the centralized authorization procedure, (ii) the mutual recognition procedure, (iii) the decentralized procedure or (iv) national authorization procedures.

The European Medicines Agency (“EMA”) implemented the centralized procedure for the approval of human drugs to facilitate marketing authorizations that are valid throughout the EU. This procedure results in a single marketing authorization granted by the European Commission that is valid across the EU, as well as in Iceland, Liechtenstein and Norway (the “**European Economic Area**”). The centralized procedure is compulsory for human drugs that are: (i) derived from biotechnology processes, such as genetic engineering, (ii) contain a new active substance indicated for the treatment of certain diseases, such as HIV/AIDS, cancer, diabetes, neurodegenerative diseases, autoimmune and other immune dysfunctions and viral diseases, (iii) officially designated orphan drugs, and (iv) advanced-therapy medicines, such as gene-therapy, somatic cell-therapy or tissue-engineered medicines. The centralized procedure may at the request of the applicant also be used for human drugs which do not fall within the above mentioned categories if the human drug (a) contains a new active substance which, on the date of entry into force of Regulation (EC) No. 726/2004, was not authorized in the European Economic Area; or (b) the applicant shows that the medicinal product constitutes a significant therapeutic, scientific or technical innovation or that the granting of authorization in the centralized procedure is in the interests of patients at European Economic Area level.

Under the centralized procedure in the EU, the maximum timeframe for the evaluation of a Marketing Authorization Application (“MAA”) by the EMA is 210 days, though the date count stops whenever the Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use (“CHMP”) asks the applicant for additional written or oral information, with adoption of the actual marketing authorization by the European Commission thereafter. Accelerated evaluation might be granted by the CHMP in exceptional cases, as when a medicinal product is expected to be of a major public health interest from the point of view of therapeutic innovation, defined by three cumulative criteria: (i) the seriousness of the disease to be treated; (ii) the absence of an appropriate alternative therapeutic approach; and (iii) anticipation of exceptional high therapeutic benefit. In this circumstance, EMA ensures that the evaluation for the opinion of the CHMP is completed within 150 days and the opinion issued thereafter. We plan to submit an application for marketing authorizations in the United States for AL001 and AL002 in the latter half of 2020.

The Mutual Recognition Procedure (“MRP”), for the approval of human drugs is an alternative approach to facilitate individual national marketing authorizations within the EU. Essentially, the MRP may be applied for all human drugs for which the centralized procedure is not obligatory. The MRP is applicable to the majority of conventional medicinal products and is based on the principle of recognition of an already existing national marketing authorization by one or more Member States.

The characteristic of the MRP is that the procedure builds on an already existing marketing authorization in a Member State of the EU that is used as reference in order to obtain marketing authorizations in other EU Member States. In the MRP, a marketing authorization for a drug already exists in one or more Member States of the EU and subsequently marketing authorization applications are made in other EU Member States by referring to the initial marketing authorization. The Member State in which the marketing authorization was first granted will then act as the reference Member State. The Member States where the marketing authorization is subsequently applied for act as concerned Member States.

The MRP is based on the principle of the mutual recognition by EU Member States of their respective national marketing authorizations. Based on a marketing authorization in the reference Member State, the applicant may apply for marketing authorizations in other Member States. In such case, the reference Member State shall update its existing assessment report about the drug in 90 days. After the assessment is completed, copies of the report are sent to all Member States, together with the approved summary of product characteristics, labeling and package leaflet. The concerned Member States then have 90 days to recognize the decision of the reference Member State and the summary of product characteristics, labeling and package leaflet. National marketing authorizations shall be granted within 30 days after acknowledgement of the agreement.

Should any Member State refuse to recognize the marketing authorization by the reference Member State, on the grounds of potential serious risk to public health, the issue will be referred to a coordination group. Within a timeframe of 60 days, Member States shall, within the coordination group, make all efforts to reach a consensus. If this fails, the procedure is submitted to an EMA scientific committee for arbitration. The opinion of this EMA Committee is then forwarded to the Commission, for the start of the decision-making process. As in the centralized procedure, this process entails consulting various European Commission Directorates General and the Standing Committee on Human Medicinal Products.

### **Human Health Product Regulation in the Rest of World**

For other countries outside of the EU, such as countries in Eastern Europe or Asia, the requirements governing the conduct of clinical trials, product licensing, pricing and reimbursement vary from country to country. In all cases, again, the clinical trials are conducted in accordance with GCP and the other applicable regulatory requirements. If we fail to comply with applicable foreign regulatory requirements, we may be subject to, among other things, fines, suspension of clinical trials, suspension or withdrawal of regulatory approvals, product recalls, seizure of products, operating restrictions and criminal prosecution.

### **Other Regulatory Considerations**

#### Labeling, Marketing and Promotion

Once an NDA or BLA is approved, a product will be subject to certain post-approval requirements. For instance, the FDA closely regulates the post-approval marketing and promotion of pharmaceuticals, including standards and regulations for direct-to-consumer advertising, off-label promotion, industry-sponsored scientific and educational activities and promotional activities on the internet and elsewhere.

While doctors are free to prescribe any pharmaceutical approved by the FDA for any use, a company can only make claims relating to the safety and efficacy of a pharmaceutical that are consistent with the FDA approval, and is only allowed to actively market a pharmaceutical for the particular indication approved by the FDA. Changes to some of the conditions established in an approved application, including changes in indications, labeling, or manufacturing processes or facilities, require submission and FDA approval of a new NDA or BLA or NDA/BLA supplement before the change can be implemented. A BLA supplement for a new indication typically requires clinical data similar to that in the original application, and the FDA uses the same procedures and actions in reviewing supplements as it does in reviewing NDAs.

In addition, any claims we make for our products in advertising or promotion must be appropriately balanced with important safety information and otherwise be adequately substantiated. Failure to comply with these requirements can result in adverse publicity, warning letters, corrective advertising, injunctions and potential civil and criminal penalties. Government regulators recently have increased their scrutiny of the promotion and marketing of pharmaceuticals.

#### Anti-Kickback and False Claims Laws

In the U.S., we are subject to complex laws and regulations pertaining to health care “fraud and abuse,” including, but not limited to, The Medicare and Medicaid Patient Protection Act of 1987 (also known as the federal “**Anti-Kickback Statute**”), the federal False Claims Act, state false claims acts and other state and federal laws and regulations. The Anti-Kickback Statute makes it illegal for any person, including a prescription drug manufacturer (or a party acting on its behalf) to knowingly and willfully solicit, receive, offer, or pay any remuneration that is intended to induce the referral of business, including the purchase, order, or prescription of a particular pharmaceutical, for which payment may be made under a federal health care program, such as Medicare or Medicaid.

The federal False Claims Act prohibits anyone from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, for payment to federal programs (including Medicare and Medicaid) claims for items or services, including pharmaceuticals, that are false or fraudulent, claims for items or services not provided as claimed, or claims for medically unnecessary items or services.

There are also an increasing number of state laws that require manufacturers to make reports to states on pricing and marketing information. Many of these laws contain ambiguities as to what is required to comply with the laws. In addition, beginning in 2013, a similar federal law requires manufacturers to track and report to the federal government certain payments made to physicians and teaching hospitals made in the previous calendar year. These laws may affect our sales, marketing, and other promotional activities by imposing administrative and compliance burdens on us. In addition, given the lack of clarity with respect to these laws and their implementation, our reporting actions could be subject to the penalty provisions of the pertinent state, and soon federal, authorities.



## Other Health Care Laws and Compliance Requirements

In the U.S., our activities are potentially subject to regulation by various federal, state and local authorities in addition to the FDA, including the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (formerly the Health Care Financing Administration), other divisions of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (e.g., its Office of Inspector General), the U.S. Department of Justice and individual U.S. Attorney offices within the Department of Justice, and state and local governments. For example, sales, marketing and scientific/educational grant programs must comply with the anti-fraud and abuse provisions of the Social Security Act, the False Claims Act, the privacy provisions of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act, and similar state laws, each as amended. Pricing and rebate programs must comply with the Medicaid rebate requirements of the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1990 and the Veterans Health Care Act of 1992 (“**VHCA**”), each as amended. If products are made available to authorized users of the Federal Supply Schedule of the General Services Administration, additional laws and requirements will apply. Under the VHCA, drug companies are required to offer certain drugs at a reduced price to a number of federal agencies including U.S. Department of Veteran Affairs and U.S. Department of Defense, the Public Health Service and certain private Public Health Service designated entities in order to participate in other federal funding programs including Medicare and Medicaid. Recent legislative changes require that discounted prices be offered for certain U.S. Department of Defense purchases for its TRICARE program via a rebate system. Participation under the VHCA requires submission of pricing data and calculation of discounts and rebates pursuant to complex statutory formulas, as well as the entry into government procurement contracts governed by the Federal Acquisition Regulations.

In order to distribute products commercially, we must comply with state laws that require the registration of manufacturers and wholesale distributors of pharmaceutical products in a state, including, in certain states, manufacturers and distributors that ship products into the state even if such manufacturers or distributors have no place of business within the state. Some states also impose requirements on manufacturers and distributors to establish the pedigree of product in the chain of distribution, including some states that require manufacturers and others to adopt new technology capable of tracking and tracing product as it moves through the distribution chain. Several states have enacted legislation requiring pharmaceutical companies to establish marketing compliance programs, file periodic reports with the state, make periodic public disclosures on sales, marketing, pricing, clinical trials and other activities or register their sales representatives. Other legislation has been enacted in certain states prohibiting pharmacies and other health care entities from providing certain physician prescribing data to pharmaceutical companies for use in sales and marketing and prohibiting certain other sales and marketing practices. All of our activities are potentially subject to federal and state consumer protection, unfair competition and other laws and regulations.

## Overview of Alzheimer’s

Alzheimer’s is a chronic neurodegenerative disorder affecting millions of people worldwide. It is the number one form of dementia in the world. The risk of being afflicted with Alzheimer’s increases with age, with one in ten people over the age of 65 having the disease. The prevalence of the disease is approximately 5.8 million individuals in the US. Alzheimer’s is also the sixth leading cause of death across all ages in the United States and its prevalence is expected to quadruple by 2050. Per the 2010 U.S. Census and the Chicago Health and Aging Project, a population-based study of chronic health conditions of older people, the average annual incidence in people ages 65-74 was 0.4 percent (meaning four of every 1,000 people will develop Alzheimer’s in any given year); in people ages 75-84, the annual incidence was 3.2 percent (32 of every 1,000 people), and for ages 85 and older (the “oldest-old”), the incidence was 7.6 percent (76 of every 1,000 people). It is estimated that the cost of caring for people with Alzheimer’s and other dementias will increase from an estimated \$290 billion in 2019 to a projected \$1.1 trillion per year by 2050 with Medicare and Medicaid covering approximately 70% of such costs. Over 16 million Americans provide unpaid care for people with Alzheimer’s or other dementias. It is estimated by the Alzheimer’s Association that in 2019 caregivers to people with Alzheimer’s will provide 18.5 billion hours of care valued at \$234 billion.

The cause and progression of Alzheimer’s are not well understood. As of 2019, more than 2,085 clinical trials have been or are being conducted to find ways to treat the disease, but it is unknown if any of the tested treatments will work.

According to the Alzheimer’s Foundation of America, it is widely accepted that with the increasing trend towards a longer lifespan coupled with the baby-boomer population approaching retirement, the incidence of Alzheimer’s is likely to double in the next 20 years. The exponential increase in the expected number of patients presenting with Alzheimer’s not only represents a major area of unmet medical need, but it also constitutes a significant market opportunity for diagnostics for this disease. Alzheimer’s biomarker sales in 2011 were reported at \$1.5 billion but are expected have doubled in 2018 to over \$3 billion. (BCC research 2013, “Advances in biomarker and monitoring diagnostics: Great markets, not so great health effects” by Björn Hofmann PhD and H. Gilbert Welch MD, MPH, 2017).

Current clinical research focuses on the early phases of the disease. However, to our knowledge, no accurate and convenient tools are available today for pre-dementia diagnosis of Alzheimer’s to support these efforts. Currently Alzheimer’s is diagnosed as a clinical entity using a process that combines cognition assessments with imaging- and spinal-fluid (“**CSF**”) tests. This diagnostic procedure may last for several months to a year and is usually initiated late in the disease development.

Several companies are focusing on blood as a test material. Typically, these companies employ a multi-assay strategy (multiple RNAs or proteins) combined with advanced statistical tools/algorithms to develop disease-specific diagnostic models.

## Intellectual Property

We are able to protect our technology from unauthorized use by third parties only to the extent that it is covered by valid and enforceable patents or is effectively maintained as a trade secret or is protected by confidentiality agreements. Accordingly, patents or other proprietary rights are an essential element of our business. Currently, we do not own a patent although we do possess a license for an immunotherapy technology and two licenses for a lithium salt and proline co-crystal technology from the University.

Patents extend for varying periods according to the date of patent filing or grant and the legal term of patents in the various countries where patent protection is obtained. The actual protection afforded by a patent, which can vary from country to country, depends on the type of patent, the scope of its coverage and the availability of legal remedies in the country.

A summary of the licensed patents is as follows:

<u>Patent Number</u>	<u>Therapy</u>	<u>Patent Title</u>	<u>Patent Type</u>	<u>Date Filed</u>	<u>Date Issued</u>	<u>Expiration Date</u>	<u>Jurisdiction</u>
9,840,521 (USA) WO2012129568A2 (Europe)	AL001	Organic Anion Lithium Ionic Cocystal Compounds and Compositions	Composition of Matter	04/19/2013	12/12/2017	04/19/2033	USA and Europe
9,603,869 (USA)	AL001	Lithium Cocystals and an Additional Neuropsychiatric Agent for Treatment of Neuropsychiatric Disorders	Method of Use	05/21/2016	03/28/2017	05/21/2036	USA
8,188,046 (USA)	AL002	Amyloid beta peptides and methods of use	Method of Use	10/12/2007	05/29/2012	02/12/2028	USA

While trade secret protection is an essential element of our business and we take security measures to protect our proprietary information and trade secrets, we cannot give assurance that our unpatented proprietary technology will afford us significant commercial protection. We seek to protect our trade secrets by entering into confidentiality agreements with third parties, employees and consultants. Our employees and consultants also sign agreements requiring that they assign us their interests in intellectual property arising from their work for us. All employees sign an agreement not to engage in any conflicting employment or activity during their employment and not to disclose or misuse confidential information. However, it is possible that these agreements may be breached or invalidated, and if so, there may not be an adequate corrective remedy available. Accordingly, we cannot ensure that our employees, consultants or any third parties will not breach the confidentiality provisions in our contracts, infringe or misappropriate our trade secrets and other proprietary rights or that measures we take to protect our proprietary rights will be adequate.

In the future, third parties may file claims asserting that our technologies or products infringe on their intellectual property. We cannot predict whether third parties will assert such claims against us or against the licensors of technology licensed to us, or whether those claims will harm our business. If we are forced to defend ourselves against such claims, whether they are with or without merit and whether they are resolved in favor of, or against, our licensors or ourselves, we may face costly litigation and the diversion of our management's attention and resources. As a result of such disputes, we may have to develop costly non-infringing technology or enter into licensing agreements. These agreements, if necessary, may be unavailable on terms acceptable to us, or at all.

We currently possess four service trademarks with the U.S. PTO that include our corporate name, Alzamend Neuro; two for our corporate slogan and one for our trade name.

## Competition

Our industry is highly competitive and subject to rapid and significant technological change. While we have some, albeit limited, development experience and scientific knowledge, we will face competition from both large and small pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, including specialty pharmaceutical companies and generic drug companies, as well as academic institutions, government agencies and research institutions, among others.

Our competition will be determined in part by the potential indications for which our products are developed and ultimately approved by regulatory authorities. It is likely that the timing of market introductions of some of our potential products or our competitors' products will be an important competitive factor. Accordingly, the speed with which we can develop our products, conduct preclinical studies and clinical trials to obtain approval and manufacture or obtain supplies of commercial quantities of any approved products should also be important competitive factors. We expect that competition among products approved for sale will be based on additional factors, such as product efficacy, safety, reliability, availability, price and patent position.

## Alzheimer's Therapeutic Landscape

Phase 2 Facts 2018	Percent Change from 2017	Phase 3 Facts 2018	Percent Change from 2017
<b>Number of Drugs:</b> 68	↑ 17%	<b>Number of Drugs:</b> 31	↓ - 3%
<b>Commercial Launch:</b> 8 Drugs could reach the market in the next five years	0%	<b>Commercial Launch:</b> 25 Drugs could reach the market in the next five years	↓ - 7%
<b>Number of Symptomatic Drugs:</b> 13	↓ -24%	<b>Number of Symptomatic Drugs:</b> 12	↑ 20%
<b>Number of Disease Modifying Drugs:</b> 55	↑ 34%	<b>Number of Disease Modifying Drugs:</b> 19	↓ -14%
<b>Prevention Trials:</b> 2 drugs are in prevention trials	0%	<b>Prevention Trials:</b> 7 drugs are in prevention trials	0%
<b>Mechanism of Action:</b> 11 drugs are classified as Tau 12 drugs are classified as Amyloid	↑ 57% ↑ 20%	<b>Mechanism of Action:</b> 14 drugs are classified as Neurotransmission	↑ 27%

## Current Drugs for Alzheimer's Disease

Aricept		Exelon		Namenda		Razadyne	
<b>Year Approved:</b>	1996	<b>Year Approved:</b>	2000	<b>Year Approved:</b>	2003	<b>Year Approved:</b>	2004
<b>Peak Revenue Per Year:</b>	\$3,454,000,000	<b>Peak Revenue Per Year:</b>	\$1,067,000,000	<b>Peak Revenue Per Year:</b>	\$2,575,000,000	<b>Peak Revenue Per Year:</b>	\$428,000,000
<b>Cost Per Patient Per Year:</b>	\$4,404	<b>Cost Per Patient Per Year:</b>	\$3,768	<b>Cost Per Patient Per Year:</b>	\$3,456	<b>Cost Per Patient Per Year:</b>	\$3,120
<b>Total Revenue (2017):</b>	\$268,000,000	<b>Total Revenue (2017):</b>	\$381,000,000	<b>Total Revenue (2017):</b>	\$452,000,000	<b>Total Revenue (2017):</b>	\$152,000,000

- Aricept – Eisai Co., Ltd. Third Quarter Financial Results ([https://www.eisai.com/ir/library/settlement/pdf/e2018Q3\\_52.pdf](https://www.eisai.com/ir/library/settlement/pdf/e2018Q3_52.pdf)).
- Exelon – Novartis Pharmaceutical Co. Q4/FY 2017 Financial Report (<https://www.novartis.com/sites/www.novartis.com/files/2018-01-interim-financial-report-en.pdf>).
- Namenda – Allergan Q4/FY 2017 Financial Report (<https://www.prnewswire.com/news-releases/allergan-reports-solid-finish-to-2017-with-12-increase-in-fourth-quarter-gaap-net-revenues-to-43-billion-300593801.html>).
- Razadyne – Takeda FY2017 Data Book ([https://www.takeda.com/siteassets/system/investors/report/quarterlyannouncements/fy2017/fy2017-full-year-results/qr2017\\_q4\\_d\\_en.pdf](https://www.takeda.com/siteassets/system/investors/report/quarterlyannouncements/fy2017/fy2017-full-year-results/qr2017_q4_d_en.pdf)).
- Thomson Reuters Report - ([https://www.researchgate.net/publication/274930518\\_Spotlight\\_on\\_Alzheimers\\_disease\\_a\\_Thomson\\_Reuters\\_Pharma\\_Matters\\_report](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/274930518_Spotlight_on_Alzheimers_disease_a_Thomson_Reuters_Pharma_Matters_report)).

## Diagnostics for Alzheimer's Disease

### Cerebrospinal Fluid (CSF)

CSF samples and protein assays of particular analytes remain today the best tools in the diagnosis of Alzheimer's and encephalitis. The procedure involves a lumbar puncture - the insertion of a hollow cannula or needle into the lower spinal column in order to collect 5-10 ml of blood free CSF. Until recently there have not been any in vitro diagnostic quality assays available to replace the lumbar puncture diagnostic procedure and there may not be until Saladax/Ortho Clinical Diagnostics or Roche Diagnostics release publicly their report CSF Ab42 and CSF Tau assays.

### Positron Emission Tomography (PET)

PET requires large, multi-million-dollar cameras which collect the radioactive decay of minute quantities of hot radioactive tracers injected into the blood stream. The tracers emit correlated photo pairs which indicate where the tracer is staining tissue in vivo. FDG-PET is an FDA-approved tracer which measures glucose metabolism and has been successfully used to image brain energy consumption. More recently Amyvid from Avid Radiopharmaceuticals, now Lilly Diagnostics, received FDA approval as an in vivo radiotracer to label the amyloid plaques of the brain. These studies typically cost \$3,000-\$5,000 per imaging session per patient and require patients travel to a facility with a PET facility rather than receive a diagnostic test in their clinician's office.

### Magneto encephalography (MEG)

MEG instruments, which are both physically large and costly to facilities wishing to purchase them, employ advanced superconducting magnets operating in near absolute zero temperature to measure minute brain currents. They are scarcely available in the US and Japan, let alone any other country in the world. They are primarily used for research and will likely never become commonplace in clinical practice due to their size and cost.

### Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

MRI instruments are able to measure the gross anatomy of the brain within the skull with resolution approaching 100 microns in a standard 1.5T clinical MRI. Although they are costly and accessible only at an imaging center (inpatient or outpatient), they are standard of care to ensure that there is no gross brain tumor or evidence of white matter infarct, typical after sub-clinical or mini-strokes have occurred. In one costly modality, functional MRI test is conducted whereby a patient is given tasks to complete while they are lying in an MRI brain scanner and asked to participate in task-based maneuvers to understand which anatomical structures are active during which dynamic task. These diagnostic studies are costly and difficult to implement with satisfactory results due to the distractions of motion artifacts and noise. In routine clinical practice, they are not commonly conducted.

### Cognition

There are many companies creating computerized cognitive assessments of a human subject from a neuropsychological perspective. Many of these are considered reliable and easily administered in a clinician's office. Some of the cognitive assessment tools in the market today are the CogState battery of tasks, the CNS Vital Signs, the ImPACT test and the CANTAB battery. However, these cognition assessment tools have limitations on their ability to accurately and objectively measure brain function.

### **Employees**

As of the date of this Offering Circular, we had one full-time and three part-time employees. The services of two former officers and Executive Chairman of Alzamend were provided pursuant to the terms of a management services agreement (the "MSA") entered into with Avalanche International Corp. ("Avalanche"), a related party, on May 1, 2016. In 2018, we retained each officer directly which provided us with management, consulting and financial services. Such services included advice and assistance concerning any and all aspects of operations, planning and financing of Alzamend and conducting relations with accountants, attorneys, financial advisors and other professionals. The term of the MSA, as amended, was for the period May 1, 2016 to December 31, 2018, with Avalanche having initially received \$40,000 per month and, beginning February 2017, receiving \$20,000 per month for the remainder of 2017. The MSA was terminated as of December 31, 2018. We accepted the resignation of our previous President and CEO, Philip Mansour, effective on November 18, 2018, and appointed Mr. Stephan Jackman as CEO as of November 30, 2018. Mr. Jackman is a full-time executive with extensive scientific and medical experience in developing immunotherapies and commercialization to lead our activities. As of December 15, 2018, we accepted the resignation of our former CFO, William B. Horne and appointed our current CFO, Kenneth S. Cragun. On May 1, 2019 we hired Henry Nisser to be our General Counsel and Executive Vice President.

### **Corporate Information**

Our mailing address is Alzamend Neuro, Inc., 3802 Spectrum Blvd., Suite #112C, Tampa, FL 33612 and our telephone number is (844) 722-6333. Our website address is [www.alzamend.com](http://www.alzamend.com) and the [www.TheAlzamendStory.com](http://www.TheAlzamendStory.com). The information contained therein or accessible thereby shall not be deemed to be incorporated into this Offering Circular.

### **DESCRIPTION OF PROPERTY**

We currently maintain our corporate offices at the University's Incubator Center located next to the USF Innovation Center featuring shared labs and extensive research facility.

## DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

The following table sets forth information regarding our executive officers, directors and significant employees, including their ages as of the date of this Offering Circular:

Name	Age	Position	Term of Office	Approximate hours per week for part-time employees
Stephan Jackman	44	Chief Executive Officer	November 2018 to present	Full-time
Kenneth S. Cragun	59	Chief Financial Officer	December 2018 to present	20 hours per week
Henry Nisser	51	General Counsel and Executive Vice President	May 2019 to present	8 hours per week
Milton C. Ault, III	50	Executive Chairman & Director	February 2016 to present	
Philip E. Mansour	52	Director	June 2016 to present	
William B. Horne	51	Director	June 2016 to present	

Directors serve until the next annual meeting and until their successors are elected and qualified. Officers are appointed to serve for one year until the meeting of the Board following the annual meeting of stockholders and until their successors have been elected and qualified.

### Stephan Jackman

Mr. Jackman began working for Alzamend on November 1, 2018. He has played an intricate role in the development of therapeutic treatments, products and programs from the research stage to market and commercialization. Mr. Jackman has demonstrated a dedicated dual focus of creating value for internal and external stakeholders while developing strategic alliances and cross-function teams to meet and exceed goals. Prior to joining Alzamend Neuro, from October 2017 to November 2018, Mr. Jackman was the Chief Operating Officer of Ennaid Therapeutics, an emerging biopharmaceutical focusing on cures for mosquito borne infectious diseases, such as Zika and Dengue viruses. Mr. Jackman was Chief Operating Officer of Exit 9 Technologies, from October 2015 to October 2017, a technology startup with a digital platform that connects retailers, publisher and customers. Additionally, from August 2014 to October 2015, he has been an independent project and management consultant assisting start-ups, Fortune 500 companies and non-profits with major strategic initiatives. He has held positions of increasing responsibility at Novartis Pharmaceuticals Corporation, L'Oréal USA, SBM Management Services, and Family Intervention Services. Mr. Jackman holds a Master of Science in Management, and a Bachelor of Engineering in Mechanical Engineering, from Stevens Institute of Technology. We believe Mr. Jackman is qualified to serve as our Chief Executive Officer because of his extensive leadership experience and industry knowledge.

### Kenneth S. Cragun

Mr. Cragun began working for Alzamend on a part-time basis on December 15, 2018. He served as a CFO Partner at Hardesty, LLC, a national executive services firm since October 2016. His assignments at Hardesty included serving as CFO of CorVel Corporation, a \$1.1 billion market cap publicly traded company (NASDAQ: CRVL) and a nationwide leader in technology driven, healthcare-related, risk management programs and of RISA Tech, Inc. a private structural design and optimization software company. Mr. Cragun was also CFO of two NASDAQ-listed companies, Local Corporation, from April 2009 to September 2016, which operated Local.com, a U.S. top 100 website, and Modtech Holdings, Inc., from June 2006 to March 2009, a supplier of modular buildings. Prior thereto, he had financial leadership roles with increasing responsibilities at MIVA, Inc., ImproveNet, Inc., NetCharge Inc., C-Cube Microsystems, Inc, and 3-Com Corporation. Mr. Cragun is currently the Chief Accounting Officer of DPW Holdings, Inc., formerly known as Digital Power Corporation (NYSE: DPW) and ("DPW") and serves on the Board of Directors and Chairman of the Audit Committee of Verb Technology Company, Inc. (NASDAQ: VERB). Mr. Cragun began his professional career at Deloitte. Mr. Cragun holds a Bachelor of Science degree in accounting from Colorado State University-Pueblo. Mr. Cragun's industry experience is vast with extensive experience in fast-growth environments and building teams in more than 20 countries. Mr. Cragun has led multiple financing transactions, including IPOs, PIPEs, convertible debt, term loans, and lines of credit. For these reasons, we believe that he is well qualified to serve as our CFO.

### Henry Nisser

Mr. Nisser began working for Alzamend on a part-time basis on May 1, 2019. From October 31, 2011 through April 26, 2019, Mr. Nisser was an associate and subsequently a partner with Sichenzia Ross Ference LLP ("SRF"), a law firm based in New York City. While with SRF, his practice was concentrated in national and international corporate law, with a particular focus on U.S. securities compliance, public as well as private M&A, equity and debt financings and corporate governance. Mr. Nisser drafted and negotiated a variety of agreements related to reorganizations, share and asset purchases, indentures, public and private offerings, tender offers and going private transactions. Mr. Nisser also represented clients' special committees established to evaluate M&A transactions and advised such committees' members with respect to their fiduciary duties. Mr. Nisser is fluent in French and Swedish as well as conversant in Italian. Mr. Nisser received his B.A. from Connecticut College in 1992, where he majored in International Relations and Economics. He received his LLB from the University of Buckingham School of Law in 1999.

**Milton C. Ault, III**

Mr. Ault founded Alzamend Neuro, Inc., a biotechnology firm dedicated to finding the treatment, prevention and cure for Alzheimer's on February 25, 2016 and has served as our Executive Chairman since November 2, 2018 and as our Chairman since inception. Mr. Ault is a seasoned business professional and entrepreneur who has spent more than twenty-seven years identifying value in various financial markets including equities, fixed income, commodities, and real estate. On March 16, 2017, Mr. Ault was appointed Executive Chairman of the Board of DPW and on December 28, 2017, Mr. Ault was appointed Chief Executive Officer of DPW. Mr. Ault has served as Chairman of Ault & Company, a holding company since December 2015, and as Chairman of Avalanche, a publicly traded company, since September 2014. Since January 2011, Mr. Ault has been the Vice President of Business Development for MCKEA Holdings, LLC, a family office. Mr. Ault has consulted for a few publicly traded and privately held companies, which range from development stage to seasoned businesses, providing each of them the benefit of his diversified experience. We believe that Mr. Ault's business background demonstrates he has the qualifications to serve as one of our directors and as Executive Chairman.

**Philip E. Mansour**

Mr. Mansour has served as a director and as the President and Chief Executive Officer of Avalanche since May 2014. Additionally, Mr. Mansour has provided executive coaching services. Mr. Mansour was the CEO of Alzamend from 2016 through 2018. Mr. Mansour worked as the Chief Operational Officer with the RXtra Solutions organization. The organization was a privately-owned set of health care development companies which had footprints in the compounding pharmacy, diagnostics, medical equipment, chemical distribution and wellness provider spaces. He has also served as Vice President, corporate development for Conceivex, Inc., a private company focused on At-Home Infertility treatment. His prior experience includes leading the research and development for some prominent educational technology companies for more than 2 decades and leading multi-million-dollar government grants with leading universities. His entrepreneurial and significant corporate experience is expected to benefit us. We believe that Mr. Mansour's business background demonstrates he has the qualifications to serve as one of our directors.

**William B. Horne**

Mr. Horne has served as director for Alzamend Neuro since June 1, 2016. Mr. Horne served as the Chief Financial Officer from June 2016 through December 2018. Mr. Horne has been a member of the board of directors of DPW since October 2016. On January 25, 2018, Mr. Horne was appointed as DPW's Chief Financial Officer. Mr. Horne is a director and Chief Financial Officer of Avalanche, a publicly traded company.

Mr. Horne previously held the position of Chief Financial Officer in various companies in the healthcare and high-tech field, including OptimisCorp, from January 2008 to May 2013, a privately held, diversified healthcare technology company located in Los Angeles, California.

Mr. Horne served as the Chief Financial Officer of Patient Safety Technologies, Inc. (OTCBB: PSTX), a medical device company located in Irvine, California, from June 2005 to October 2008 and as the interim Chief Executive Officer from January 2007 to April 2008. In his dual role at Patient Safety Technologies, Mr. Horne was directly responsible for structuring the divestiture of non-core assets, capital financings and debt restructuring.

Mr. Horne has also held supervisory positions at Price Waterhouse, LLP and has a Bachelor of Arts Magna Cum Laude in Accounting from Seattle University. We believe that Mr. Horne's extensive financial and accounting experience in diversified industries and with companies involving complex transactions gives him the qualifications and skills to serve as one of our directors.

**Board Leadership Structure and Risk Oversight**

The Board oversees our business and considers the risks associated with our business strategy and decisions. The Board currently implements its risk oversight function as a whole. On November 2, 2018, the Board adopted a charter that establishes an Audit Committee and a Nomination & Governance Committee. Each of the Board committees will provide risk oversight in respect of its areas of concentration and reports material risks to the board for further consideration.

### **Term of Office**

Directors serve until the next annual meeting and until their successors are elected and qualified. Officers are appointed to serve for one year until the meeting of the Board following the annual meeting of stockholders and until their successors have been elected and qualified.

### **Director Independence**

We use the definition of “independence” of The NASDAQ Stock Market to make this determination. NASDAQ Listing Rule 5605(a)(2) provides that an “independent director” is a person other than an officer or employee of the company or any other individual having a relationship which, in the opinion of our Board, would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director. The NASDAQ listing rules provide that a director cannot be considered independent if:

- the director is, or at any time during the past three years was, an employee of the company;
- the director or a family member of the director accepted any compensation from the company in excess of \$120,000 during any period of 12 consecutive months within the three years preceding the independence determination (subject to certain exemptions, including, among other things, compensation for board or board committee service);
- the director or a family member of the director is a partner in, controlling stockholder of, or an executive officer of an entity to which the company made, or from which the company received, payments in the current or any of the past three fiscal years that exceed 5% of the recipient’s consolidated gross revenue for that year or \$200,000, whichever is greater (subject to certain exemptions);
- the director or a family member of the director is employed as an executive officer of an entity where, at any time during the past three years, any of the executive officers of the company served on the compensation committee of such other entity; or
- the director or a family member of the director is a current partner of the company’s outside auditor, or at any time during the past three years was a partner or employee of the company’s outside auditor, and who worked on the company’s audit.

Under such definitions, we have no independent directors. However, our Common Stock is not currently quoted or listed on any national exchange or interdealer quotation system with a requirement that a majority of our Board be independent and, therefore, we are not subject to any director independence requirements.

### **Family Relationships**

There are no family relationships among any of our officers or directors.

### **Involvement in Certain Legal Proceedings**

Except as disclosed below, to our knowledge, none of our current directors or executive officers has, during the past five years:

- been convicted in a criminal proceeding or been subject to a pending criminal proceeding (excluding traffic violations and other minor offenses);
- had any bankruptcy petition filed by or against the business or property of the person, or of any partnership, corporation or business association of which he was a general partner or executive officer, either at the time of the bankruptcy filing or within two years prior to that time;
- been subject to any order, judgment, or decree, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, of any court of competent jurisdiction or federal or state authority, permanently or temporarily enjoining, barring, suspending or otherwise limiting, his involvement in any type of business, securities, futures, commodities, investment, banking, savings and loan, or insurance activities, or to be associated with persons engaged in any such activity;

- been found by a court of competent jurisdiction in a civil action or by the SEC or the Commodity Futures Trading Commission to have violated a federal or state securities or commodities law, and the judgment has not been reversed, suspended, or vacated;
  - been the subject of, or a party to, any federal or state judicial or administrative order, judgment, decree, or finding, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated (not including any settlement of a civil proceeding among private litigants), relating to an alleged violation of any federal or state securities or commodities law or regulation, any law or regulation respecting financial institutions or insurance companies including, but not limited to, a temporary or permanent injunction, order of disgorgement or restitution, civil money penalty or temporary or permanent cease-and-desist order, or removal or prohibition order, or any law or regulation prohibiting mail or wire fraud or fraud in connection with any business entity; or
  - been the subject of, or a party to, any sanction or order, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, of any self-regulatory organization (as defined in Section 3(a)(26) of the Exchange Act), any registered entity (as defined in Section 1(a)(29) of the Commodity Exchange Act), or any equivalent exchange, association, entity or organization that has disciplinary authority over its members or persons associated with a member.
1. Mr. Cragun served as Chief Financial Officer of Local Corporation (April 2009 to September 2016), formerly based in Irvine, California, and, in June 2015, Local Corporation filed a voluntary petition in the United States Bankruptcy Court for the Central District of California seeking relief under the provisions of Chapter 11 of Title 11 of the United States Code (the “Bankruptcy Code”).

Except as set forth in our discussion below in “Certain Relationships and Related Transactions,” none of our directors or executive officers has been involved in any transactions with us or any of our directors, executive officers, affiliates or associates which are required to be disclosed pursuant to the rules and regulations of the SEC.

We are not currently a party to any legal proceedings, the adverse outcome of which, individually or in the aggregate, we believe will have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition or operating results.

#### **Code of Business Conduct and Ethics**

Our Board has adopted a written code of business conduct and ethics, revised effective May 29, 2018, that applies to our directors, officers and employees, including our principal executive officer, principal financial officer and principal accounting officer or controller, or persons performing similar functions. We have posted on our website a current copy of the code and all disclosures that are required by law in regard to any amendments to, or waivers from, any provision of the code.



## EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

Compensation of our two most highly paid executive officers or directors for the year ended April 30, 2019 was as follows:

Name and Principal Position	Cash Compensation (\$)	Other Compensation (\$) (1)	Total Compensation (\$)
Stephan Jackman, Chief Executive Officer	\$ 50,000	\$ 3,317,557	\$ 3,367,557
Kenneth S. Cragun, Chief Financial Officer	\$ 20,000	\$ 1,147,549	\$ 1,167,549

(1) The values reported in the “Other Compensation” column represents the aggregate grant date fair value, computed in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) 718 Share Based Payments, of grants of stock options to each of our named executive officers and directors.

The services of the two former officers and Executive Chairman of our company were provided pursuant to the terms of an MSA entered into with Avalanche, a related party, on May 1, 2016. Pursuant to the terms of the MSA, Avalanche provided management, consulting and financial services to Alzamend. Such services included advice and assistance concerning any and all aspects of operations, planning and financing of Alzamend and conducting relations with accountants, attorney, financial advisors and other professionals. The term of the MSA, as amended, was for the period May 1, 2016 to December 31, 2018, with Avalanche having initially received \$40,000 per month and, beginning February 2017, receiving \$20,000 per month for the remainder of 2017. During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, we recognized \$160,000 and \$240,000, respectively, in management fees. At April 30, 2019 and April 30, 2018, \$75,000 and \$3,000, respectively, was included within related party payable on our balance sheet. The MSA was terminated as of December 31, 2018.

In December 2018, we entered into a consulting agreement with Mr. Horne to provide 12 months of CFO transition consulting services for \$50,000. For the year ended April 30, 2019, \$12,500 was paid to Mr. Horne under the consulting agreement.

### Employment agreement with Stephan Jackman

On November 30, 2018, we entered into an offer letter with Stephan Jackman to serve as our Chief Executive Officer. Based on the terms set forth in the offer letter, the we intend to enter into a four-year employment agreement with Mr. Jackman. For his services, Mr. Jackman will be paid a base salary of \$150,000 per annum, which sum will be increased to \$180,000 upon the approval of the FDA IND application for AL001, and to \$225,000 upon the approval of the FDA IND application for AL002. In addition, Mr. Jackman shall be eligible to receive an annual cash bonus equal to a percentage of his annual base salary based on achievement of applicable performance goals determined by the Board. The Annual Bonus, if any, shall in part be determined based upon the successful attainment of the following milestones (no bonuses have been paid as of the date of this Offering Circular):

- Approval to conduct a Second Phase Clinical Trial for AL002;
- Approval to conduct a Third Phase Clinical Trial for AL002;
- Approval to conduct a Third Phase Clinical Trial for AL001;
- Equity or debt financings

Further, Mr. Jackman received an option to purchase 5,000,000 shares of Common Stock exercisable for a period of ten (10) years from November 16, 2018, at a per share price of \$1.00, which option will vest as follows:

- Three million (3,000,000) shares of Common Stock shall vest ratably over 48 months beginning on November 16, 2018;
- One million (1,000,000) shares of Common Stock shall vest upon approval of an NDA for AL001 by the FDA within 36 months from November 1, 2018; and
- One million (1,000,000) shares of Common Stock shall vest upon approval of an NDA for AL002 by the FDA within 48 months from November 1, 2018.

On November 1, 2019, Mr. Jackman’s base salary was increased to \$225,000.

On November 26, 2019, the Board of Directors granted 2,000,000 performance- and market-contingent awards to Mr. Jackman. These awards have an exercise price of \$1.50 per share. These awards have multiple separate market triggers for vesting based upon either (i) the successful achievement of stepped target closing prices on a national securities exchange for 90 consecutive trading days later than 180 days after the Company's initial public offering for its common stock, or (ii) stepped target prices for a change in control transaction. The target prices range from \$15 per share to \$40 per share. In the event any the stock price milestones are not achieved within three years, the unvested portion of the performance options will be reduced by 25%.

#### **Employment agreement with Ken Cragun**

On November 30, 2018, we entered into an offer letter with Kenneth Cragun to serve as our Chief Financial Officer. Based on the terms set forth in the offer letter, we intend to enter into a four-year employment agreement Mr. Cragun. For his services, Mr. Cragun will be paid a base salary of \$60,000 per annum, which sum will be increased to \$120,000 upon the approval of a listing application submitted on behalf of our company to have our shares of Common Stock listed on a national securities exchange. In addition, Mr. Cragun shall be eligible to receive an annual cash bonus equal to a percentage of his annual base salary based on achievement of applicable performance goals determined by the Board. The Annual Bonus, if any, shall in part be determined based upon the successful attainment of the following milestones (no bonuses have been paid as of the date of this Offering Circular):

- Approval to conduct a Second Phase Clinical Trial for AL002;
- Approval to conduct a Third Phase Clinical Trial for AL002;
- Approval to conduct a Third Phase Clinical Trial for AL001;
- Equity or debt financings

While the offer letter for Mr. Cragun stated an option life of seven (7) years, Mr. Cragun received a board-approved option to purchase 1,500,000 shares of Common Stock exercisable for a period of ten (10) years from December 15, 2018, at a per share price of \$1.00. The option will vest ratably over 48 months beginning on December 15, 2018; however, 500,000 shares of Common Stock will vest immediately upon the approval of a listing application submitted on behalf of our company to have our shares of Common Stock listed on a national securities exchange.

On November 1, 2019, Mr. Cragun's base salary was increased to \$100,000.

On November 26, 2019, the Board of Directors granted 1,000,000 performance- and market-contingent awards to Mr. Cragun. These awards have an exercise price of \$1.50 per share. These awards have multiple separate market triggers for vesting based upon either (i) the successful achievement of stepped target closing prices on a national securities exchange for 90 consecutive trading days later than 180 days after the Company's initial public offering for its common stock, or (ii) stepped target prices for a change in control transaction. The target prices range from \$15 per share to \$40 per share. In the event any the stock price milestones are not achieved within three years, the unvested portion of the performance options will be reduced by 25%.

#### **Employment agreement with Henry Nisser**

On May 20, 2019, we entered into a four-year employment agreement having an effective date of May 1, 2019, with Henry Nisser to serve our Executive Vice President and General Counsel. For his services, Mr. Nisser will be paid a base salary of \$50,000 per annum. In addition, Mr. Nisser shall be eligible to receive an annual cash bonus equal to a percentage of his annual base salary based on achievement of applicable performance goals determined by the Board.

Further, Mr. Nisser shall be entitled to receive an option an option to purchase 1,250,000 shares of Common Stock exercisable for a period of five (5) years at a per share exercise price of \$1.50. The shares of Common Stock underlying the option shall vest ratably over 48 months beginning on June 1, 2019.

#### **Consulting Agreement with Dr. Chuanhai Cao**

In December 2017, we entered into a five-year consulting agreement with Dr. Chuanhai Cao to support the design and incremental work to obtain FDA approval for AL002. The agreement included an initial payment of \$6,000 and monthly payments of \$3,000 per month plus 500,000 options at \$1.00 per share that vest ratably over the term of the agreement.

#### **Scientific Advisory Board Agreements**

We entered into consulting agreements with Dr. Thomas Wisniewski and Dr. Eric McDade on February 1, 2019 and May 1, 2019, respectively. The annual cash compensation under the consulting agreements is \$12,000 per committee member and options to purchase 50,000 shares at \$1.00 per share with a three-year life, vesting over two years.

Dr. Eric McDade is a cognitive neurologist actively involved in the field of Alzheimer disease treatment. Dr. McDade is the Principal Investigator at the DIAN Expanded Registry and Associate Professor at the Washington University School of Medicine. He received his Doctor of Osteopath, Medicine from the Chicago College of Osteopathic Medicine.

Dr. Thomas Wisniewski is the Director of the Center for Cognitive Neurology at NYU Langone's Alzheimer's Disease Center. Dr. Wisniewski received his MD from the University of London.

## CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS

### Transactions with Related Persons

As of April 30, 2016, we had sold 1,000,000 shares of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock to MCKEA Holdings, LLC ("**MCKEA**"), a related party for a purchase price of \$8,000. The Series A Convertible Preferred Stock is convertible at a rate of 20:1 into shares of our Common Stock yet carry the voting power on a convertible basis at a rate of 50:1. Kristine L. Ault is the managing member of MCKEA Holdings, LLC and is the wife of Milton C. Ault, III, Executive Chairman of our Board.

On May 1, 2016, we entered into an MSA with Avalanche, a related party. Messrs. Ault, Horne and Mansour are also officers and directors of Avalanche. Further, MCKEA is the majority member of Philou Ventures, LLC, which is the controlling shareholder of Avalanche. Pursuant to the terms of the MSA, Avalanche provided management, consulting and financial services to Alzamend. Such services included advice and assistance concerning any and all aspects of operations, planning and financing of Alzamend and conducting relations with accountants, attorney, financial advisors and other professionals. The term of the MSA, as amended, was for the period May 1, 2016 to December 31, 2017, and was extended by written agreement. We initially paid \$40,000 per month for these services and, beginning February 2017, began paying \$20,000 per month. During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, we recognized \$160,000 and \$240,000, respectively, in management fees. At April 30, 2019 and April 30, 2018, \$75,000 and \$3,000, respectively, was included within related party payable on our balance sheet. The MSA expired on December 31, 2018.

In December 2018, we entered into a consulting agreement with Mr. Horne to provide 12 months of CFO transition consulting services for \$50,000.

On June 28, 2017, MCKEA and Spartan Capital Securities, LLC ("**Spartan**") entered into a five-year consulting agreement (the "**MCKEA Consulting Agreement**"). Pursuant to the MCKEA Consulting Agreement, upon the receipt by us of no less than \$2,500,000 in gross proceeds from a Private Placement Memorandum dated August 17, 2017, MCKEA transferred to Spartan 5,000,000 shares of Alzamend Common Stock. During the term of the MCKEA Consulting Agreement, Spartan will provide consulting services related to general corporate and other matters related to MCKEA's investment in us such as advice on mergers and acquisition transactions, finance strategies, identification of potential management candidates and other strategic introductions. The 5,000,000 shares of Common Stock were transferred by MCKEA to Spartan on January 31, 2018.

The amount due at April 30, 2019 and 2018, to MCKEA and our officers for reimbursement of expenses paid and incurred by these related parties was \$6,736 and \$6,636, respectively. The amounts are included within related party payable on our balance sheet.

There were no amounts due at April 30, 2018, to related parties from short-term loans. The amount due at April 30, 2017, to related parties from short-term loans, inclusive of unamortized original discount of \$6,271, was \$253,829. The amount is included within notes payable, related parties, on our balance sheet (See Note 11).

On April 10, 2018, Avalanche, issued the AVL Note to evidence our loan of up to \$995,500 for the period ending on April 30, 2019, subject to the terms and conditions stated in the AVL Note. The AVL Note accrues interest at 10% per annum and includes a 10% original issue discount. During the year ended April 30, 2019, we provided loans to Avalanche in the principal amount of \$792,085, of which \$558,000 was repaid. The balance outstanding on the AVL Note as of April 30, 2019 was \$205,915.

On April 30, 2019, we entered into a SPA for the purchase of 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$15,000,000, or \$1.50 per share with 5,000,000 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance (the "**ALSF Warrants**"). The total purchase price of \$15,000,000 was in the form of a Note from Ault ALSF. The control person of ALSF is Mr. Ault, the Executive Chairman of our company.

The Note is secured by a pledge of the purchased shares. While the SPA provides for ALSF's ability to pledge the securities acquired thereby, given that the purchased securities are subject to the SPA, we and ALSF agree that such securities may not be pledged to any third party until the current pledge agreement has been terminated through full repayment of the Note.

Pursuant to the SPA, ALSF is entitled to full ratchet anti-dilution protection, most-favored nation status, denying the Company the right to enter into a variable rate transaction absent its consent, and the right to participate in any future financing the Company may consummate. All these rights, other than the right to participate in future financings which will not terminate until ALSF no longer holds any shares of Common Stock or any ALSF Warrants, will terminate on the earlier to occur of such date that we have (i) completed a Qualified Financing, or (ii) received approval by the FDA for any of our product candidates in Phase 3 clinical trial. For purposes of the SPA, a “Qualified Financing” means the sale of equity securities by us in a single transaction or a series of related transactions whether or not registered under the Securities Act, resulting in gross proceeds to us of no less than \$25,000,000. If we were to sell shares of Common Stock in this Offering for gross proceeds of at least \$25,000,000, then the foregoing rights (other than the right to participate in future financings) would be terminated.

In addition, the SPA entitles ALSF the right to have all the shares of Common Stock to which it is entitled under the SPA be registered under the Securities Act within 180 days of the final closing of an initial public offering.

The Company agreed to enter into the SPA with ALSF primarily as a result of the provision in the Placement Agreement that required the Company to provide anti-dilution protection to the Placement Agent, certain of its related parties and the investors in the Private Placement but not the Company’s other shareholders in the event that MCKEA were to convert its Series A Preferred Stock into Common Stock. ALSF and MCKEA are related parties, so the Company believes that it was fair and reasonable to permit ALSF to acquire shares of Common Stock for the same purchase price paid by the investors in the Private Placement in light of the constraints imposed on MCKEA’s ability to convert its shares of Series A Preferred Stock as the Company’s other shareholders would be harmed to some degree if MCKEA were to convert its Series A Preferred Stock.

Further, the additional funds that would be received by the Company from ALSF do not include any cash or equity based fees and are therefore far less expensive for the Company and less dilutive to its shareholders than funds received from the Private Offering. Finally, the term of the Note was intended to approximate the timing of when additional funds would be required by the Company, based on the assumption that a portion of the purchase would be funded throughout the term of the Note.

To the best of our knowledge, from inception to our most recent fiscal year end on April 30, 2019, other than as set forth above, there were no material transactions, or series of similar transactions, or any currently proposed transactions, or series of similar transactions, to which we were or are to be a party, in which the amount involved exceeds \$19,585, and in which any director or executive officer, or any security holder who is known by us to own of record or beneficially own more than 5% of any class of our Common Stock, or any member of the immediate family of any of the foregoing persons, has an interest (other than compensation to our officers and directors in the ordinary course of business).

## PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS

The following table shows the beneficial ownership of our Common Stock as of February 29, 2020, held by (i) each person known to us to be the beneficial owner of more than five percent (5%) of any class of our shares; (ii) each director; (iii) each executive officer; and (iv) all directors and executive officers as a group. As of February 29, 2020, there were 63,662,858 shares of Common Stock issued and outstanding and 750,000 shares of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock issued and outstanding.

Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the Commission, and generally includes voting power and/or investment power with respect to the securities held. Shares of Common Stock subject to options and warrants currently exercisable or which may become exercisable within 60 days of the date of this Offering Circular, are deemed outstanding and beneficially owned by the person holding such options or warrants for purposes of computing the number of shares and percentage beneficially owned by such person, but are not deemed outstanding for purposes of computing the percentage beneficially owned by any other person. Except as indicated in the footnotes to this table, the persons or entities named have sole voting and investment power with respect to all shares of Common Stock shown as beneficially owned by them.

Unless otherwise indicated, the principal address of each of the persons below is c/o Alzamend Neuro, Inc., 3802 Spectrum Blvd., Suite #112C, Tampa, FL 33612.

Directors and Officers	Number of shares of Common Stock Beneficially Owned	Percentage of Shares Beneficially Owned
Philip E. Mansour (1)	2,500,000	3.78%
Milton C. Ault, III (2)(3)(4)	55,000,000	50.62%
William B. Horne (1)	2,500,000	3.78%
Stephan Jackman (5)	1,062,500	1.64%
Kenneth S. Cragun (5)	500,000	0.78%
Henry Nisser (5)	286,458	0.45%
All directors and named executive officers as a group (6 persons)	61,848,958	53.54%
<b>Greater than 10% Beneficial Owners:</b>		
MCKEA Holdings, LLC (3)	37,500,000	37.07%
Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC (4)	15,000,000	21.85%

(1) Consists of options to purchase 2,500,000 shares of Common Stock that are exercisable within 60 days of February 29, 2020.

(2) Includes options to purchase 2,500,000 shares of Common Stock that are exercisable within 60 days of February 29, 2020.

(3) Includes MCKEA Holdings' 750,000 Series A Preferred Shares that are convertible into 15,000,000 shares of Common Stock but carry the voting power of 37,500,000 shares of Common Stock. Kristine L. Ault is the managing member of MCKEA Holdings, LLC and is the wife of Milton C. Ault, III, Executive Chairman of our Board.

(4) Includes 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock and warrants to purchase 5,000,000 shares of Common Stock held by Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC that are exercisable within 60 days of February 29, 2020. The control person of Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC is Mr. Ault, the Executive Chairman of our company.

(5) Represents options to purchase shares of Common Stock that are exercisable within 60 days of February 29, 2020. Mr. Nisser's address is 100 Park Avenue, Suite 1658, New York, NY 10017.

## DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES

The following is a summary of the rights of our capital stock as provided in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws. For more detailed information, please see our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, which have been filed as exhibits to the Offering Statement of which this Offering Circular is a part.

### General

The Company is authorized to issue two classes of stock. The total number of shares of stock which the Company is authorized to issue is three hundred and ten million (310,000,000) shares, consisting of three hundred million (300,000,000) shares of Common Stock, \$0.0001 par value and ten million (10,000,000) shares of preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value (the “**Preferred Stock**”).

### Common Stock

As of the date of this Offering Circular, the Company had 63,662,858 shares of Common Stock issued and outstanding.

### Voting

The holders of the Common Stock are entitled to one vote for each share held at all meetings of shareholders (and written actions in lieu of meeting). There shall be no cumulative voting. The holders of shares of Common Stock are entitled to dividends when and as declared by the Board from funds legally available therefor, and upon liquidation are entitled to share pro rata in any distribution to holders of Common Stock. There are no preemptive, conversion or redemption privileges, nor sinking fund provisions with respect to the Common Stock.

### Changes in Authorized Number

The number of authorized shares of Common Stock may be increased or decreased subject to the Company’s legal commitments at any time and from time to time to issue them, by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the capital stock of the Company entitled to vote.

### Preferred Stock

The Preferred Stock may be issued from time to time in one or more series. The Board is authorized to fix the number of shares of any series of Preferred Stock and to determine the designation of any such series. The Board is also authorized to determine or alter the rights, preferences, privileges, and restrictions granted to or imposed upon any wholly unissued series of Preferred Stock and, within the limits and restrictions stated in any resolution or resolutions of the Board originally fixing the number of shares constituting any series, to increase or decrease (but not below the number of shares of such series than outstanding) the number of shares of any such series subsequent to the issue of shares of that series. Currently, 750,000 shares of Preferred Stock are designated as Series A Convertible Preferred Stock, all of which are issued and outstanding.

### Series A Preferred Stock

The Board originally designated 1,360,000 shares of its Preferred Stock as “Series A Convertible Preferred Stock” (the “**Series A Preferred Shares**”). While the Company originally and issued all such shares as shown in the table in the section entitled “Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management” above, 610,000 Series A Preferred Shares have been converted into shares of Common Stock. As a result, there are presently 750,000 Series A Preferred Shares issued and outstanding.

The Series A Preferred Shares convey no dividend rights except as may be declared by the Board in its sole and absolute discretion, out of funds legally available for that purpose.

Holders of Series A Preferred Shares are entitled to 50 non-cumulative votes per share on all matters presented to our stockholders for action. This right could adversely affect the voting power of the holders of Common Stock and could have the effect of making it more difficult for a third party to acquire or could discourage or delay a third party from acquiring, a majority of our outstanding stock. In addition, the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the Series A Preferred then outstanding, voting as a separate class, is required for the Company to do any of the following:

- amend, alter or repeal any of the preferences or rights of the Series A Preferred Shares;
- authorize any reclassification of the Series A Preferred Shares;
- increase the authorized number of Series A Preferred Shares; or
- create any class or series of shares ranking prior to the Series A Preferred Shares as to dividends or liquidation.

The Series A Preferred Shares are not entitled to preemptive rights.

In the event of any dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary, the Holders of Series A Preferred Shares shall be entitled to participate in any distribution out of the assets of the Company on an equal basis per share with the holders of the Common Stock.

Holders of Series A Preferred Shares have the right to convert their shares into shares of Common Stock at any time at a conversion rate equal to twenty (20) shares of Common Stock for every one (1) Series A Preferred Stock Share.

#### **DIVIDEND POLICY**

We plan to retain any earnings for the foreseeable future for our operations. We have never paid any dividends on our Common Stock and do not anticipate paying any cash dividends in the foreseeable future. Any future determination to pay cash dividends will be at the discretion of our Board and will depend on our financial condition, operating results, capital requirements and such other factors as our Board deems relevant.

#### **UNDERWRITING**

We may enter into an underwriting agreement with the Underwriter, with respect to the shares of our Common Stock in this offering. The Underwriter may offer and sell, up to 6,000,000 shares of our Common Stock, on a “best-efforts, no minimum” basis.

We anticipate the shares of our Common Stock will be listed on a national securities exchange under the symbol “ALZA.”

The following table summarizes the underwriting compensation, if any, we may pay:

	Public Offering Price	Underwriting Commissions	Proceeds to Us, Before Expenses
Per share	\$ 7.50	\$ .75	\$ 6.75
Total maximum offering	\$ 45,000,000	\$ 4,500,000	\$ 40,500,000

We intend to apply to have our Common Stock approved for listing on the NYSE American under the symbol “ALZA.” If the application is approved, trading of our Common Stock on NYSE American is expected to begin within five days after the date of initial issuance of the Common Stock. Our receipt of a listing approval letter is not the same as an actual listing on a national securities exchange. The listing approval letter will serve only to confirm that, if we sell a number of shares in this “best-efforts” offering sufficient to satisfy applicable listing criteria, our Common Stock will in fact be listed.

Prior to this offering, there has been no public market for our Common Stock. The initial public offering price has been determined by negotiations between us and the Underwriter. In determining the initial public offering price, we and the Underwriter have considered a number of factors including:

- the information set forth in this Offering Circular and otherwise available to the Underwriter;
- our prospects and the history and prospects for the industry in which we compete;
- an assessment of our management;
- our prospects for future earnings;
- the general condition of the securities markets at the time of this offering;
- the recent market prices of, and demand for, publicly traded Common Stock of generally comparable companies; and
- other factors deemed relevant by the Underwriter and us.

Neither we nor the Underwriter can assure investors that an active trading market will develop for shares of our Common Stock, or that the shares will trade in the public market at or above the initial public offering price.

SOS Back Office Solutions, LLC will serve as transfer agent to maintain stockholder information on a book-entry basis.



## ADDITIONAL INFORMATION ABOUT THE OFFERING

### Investment Limitations

Generally, no sale may be made to you in this offering if the aggregate purchase price you pay is more than 10% of the greater of your annual income or net worth (please see below on how to calculate your net worth). Different rules apply to accredited investors and non-natural persons. Before making any representation that your investment does not exceed applicable thresholds, we encourage you to review Rule 251(d)(2)(i)(C) of Regulation A. For general information on investing, we encourage you to refer to [www.investor.gov](http://www.investor.gov).

Because this is a Tier 2, Regulation A offering, most investors must comply with the 10% limitation on investment in the offering. The only investor in this offering exempt from this limitation is an “accredited investor” as defined under Rule 501 of Regulation D under the Securities Act (an “**Accredited Investor**”). If you meet one of the following tests you should qualify as an Accredited Investor:

- (i) You are a natural person who has had individual income in excess of \$200,000 in each of the two most recent years, or joint income with your spouse in excess of \$300,000 in each of these years, and have a reasonable expectation of reaching the same income level in the current year;
- (ii) You are a natural person and your individual net worth, or joint net worth with your spouse, exceeds \$1,000,000 at the time you purchase Offered Shares (please see below on how to calculate your net worth);
- (iii) You are an executive officer or general partner of the issuer or a manager or executive officer of the general partner of the issuer;
- (iv) You are an organization described in Section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code, a corporation, a Massachusetts or similar business trust or a partnership, not formed for the specific purpose of acquiring the Offered Shares, with total assets in excess of \$5,000,000;
- (v) You are a bank or a savings and loan association or other institution as defined in the Securities Act, a broker or dealer registered pursuant to Section 15 of the Exchange Act, an insurance company as defined by the Securities Act, an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (the “**Investment Company Act**”), or a business development company as defined in that act, any Small Business Investment Company licensed by the Small Business Investment Act of 1958 or a private business development company as defined in the Investment Advisers Act of 1940;
- (vi) You are an entity (including an Individual Retirement Account trust) in which each equity owner is an accredited investor;
- (vii) You are a trust with total assets in excess of \$5,000,000, your purchase of Offered Shares is directed by a person who either alone or with his purchaser representative(s) (as defined in Regulation D promulgated under the Securities Act) has such knowledge and experience in financial and business matters that he is capable of evaluating the merits and risks of the prospective investment, and you were not formed for the specific purpose of investing in the Offered Shares; or
- (viii) You are a plan established and maintained by a state, its political subdivisions, or any agency or instrumentality of a state or its political subdivisions, for the benefit of its employees, if such plan has assets in excess of \$5,000,000.

### Offering Period and Expiration Date

This offering will start on or immediately prior to the date on which the Commission initially qualifies this Offering Statement (the “**Qualification Date**”) and will terminate on the Termination Date.

## Procedures for Subscribing

If you decide to subscribe for Offered Shares in this offering, you should:

Go to [www.AlzamendRegA.com](http://www.AlzamendRegA.com), click on the “Reserve Shares” button and follow the procedures as described.

1. Electronically receive, review, execute and deliver to us a subscription agreement; and
2. Deliver funds directly by wire or electronic funds transfer via ACH to the specified account maintained by SOS Back Office Solutions, LLC, the official Escrow Agent for this Offering, or mail payment in the form of check, money order or cashier’s check directly to SOS Back Office FBO Alzamend Neuro, Inc. 512 SE Salmon Street, Portland, Oregon 97214.

Any potential investor will have ample time to review the subscription agreement, along with their counsel, prior to making any final investment decision. We shall only deliver such subscription agreement upon request after a potential investor has had ample opportunity to review this Offering Circular.

**Right to Reject Subscriptions.** After we receive your complete, executed subscription agreement and the funds required under the subscription agreement have been transferred to the escrow account, we have the right to review and accept or reject your subscription in whole or in part, for any reason or for no reason. We will return all monies from rejected subscriptions immediately to you, without interest or deduction.

**Acceptance of Subscriptions.** Upon our acceptance of a subscription agreement, we will countersign the subscription agreement and issue the shares subscribed at closing provided, however, that we reserve the right to reject any subscription, in whole or in part, for any reason or for no reason. Once you submit the subscription agreement and it is accepted, you may not revoke or change your subscription or request your subscription funds. All accepted subscription agreements are irrevocable.

Under Rule 251 of Regulation A, non-accredited, non-natural investors are subject to the investment limitation and may only invest funds which do not exceed 10% of the greater of the purchaser’s revenue or net assets (as of the purchaser’s most recent fiscal year end). A non-accredited, natural person may only invest funds which do not exceed 10% of the greater of the purchaser’s annual income or net worth (please see below on how to calculate your net worth).

**NOTE:** For the purposes of calculating your net worth, it is defined as the difference between total assets and total liabilities. This calculation must exclude the value of your primary residence and may exclude any indebtedness secured by your primary residence (up to an amount equal to the value of your primary residence). In the case of fiduciary accounts, net worth and/or income suitability requirements may be satisfied by the beneficiary of the account or by the fiduciary, if the fiduciary directly or indirectly provides funds for the purchase of the Offered Shares.

In order to purchase Offered Shares and prior to the acceptance of any funds from an investor, an investor will be required to represent, to the Company’s satisfaction, that he is either an accredited investor or is in compliance with the 10% of net worth or annual income limitation on investment in this offering.

## LEGAL MATTERS

Certain legal matters with respect to the shares of Common Stock offered hereby will be passed upon by Sichenzia Ross Ference LLP, New York, NY.

## EXPERTS

The financial statements of Alzamend Neuro, Inc. as of April 30, 2019 and 2018 and for each of the years in the two-year period ended April 30, 2019 have been audited by Squar Milner LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report thereon (which report expresses an unqualified opinion and includes an explanatory paragraph relating to the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern), and included in this Offering Circular and Offering Statement in reliance upon such report and upon the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We have filed with the Commission a Regulation A Offering Statement on Form 1-A under the Securities Act of 1993, as amended, with respect to the shares of Common Stock offered hereby. This Offering Circular, which constitutes a part of the Offering Statement, does not contain all of the information set forth in the Offering Statement or the exhibits and schedules filed therewith. For further information about us and the Common Stock offered hereby, we refer you to the Offering Statement and the exhibits and schedules filed therewith. Statements contained in this Offering Circular regarding the contents of any contract or other document that is filed as an exhibit to the Offering Statement are not necessarily complete, and each such statement is qualified in all respects by reference to the full text of such contract or other document filed as an exhibit to the Offering Statement.

Upon the completion of this offering, and provided that we register our shares of Common Stock under the Exchange Act by filing a registration statement on Form 8-A, we will be required to file periodic reports, proxy statements, and other information with the Commission pursuant to that Act. Until such time, we will continue to be required to file annual reports on Form 1-K, semiannual reports on Form 1-SA and current reports on Form 1-U. You may read and copy this information at the Commission's Public Reference Room, 100 F Street, N.E., Room 1580, Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the Commission at 1-800-SEC-0330. The Commission also maintains an Internet website that contains reports, proxy statements and other information about issuers, including us, that file electronically with the Commission. The address of this site is [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

**INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**

**For the Six Months Ended October 31, 2019**

Balance Sheets as of October 31, 2019 (unaudited) and April 30, 2019	F-2
Statements of Operations for the six months ended October 31, 2019 and 2018 (unaudited)	F-3
Statements of Cash Flows for the six months ended October 31, 2019 and 2018 (unaudited)	F-4
Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity for the six months ended October 31, 2019 and 2018 (unaudited)	F-5
Notes to Financial Statements (unaudited)	F-6 – F-15

**For the Fiscal Year Ended April 30, 2019**

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-16
Balance Sheets as of April 30, 2019 and 2018	F-17
Statements of Operations for the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018	F-18
Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018	F-19
Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity for the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018	F-20
Notes to Financial Statements	F-21 – F-36

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**Balance Sheets**

	<u>October 31, 2019</u> (unaudited)	<u>April 30, 2019</u>
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>CURRENT ASSETS</b>		
Cash	\$ 165,617	\$ 42,606
Note receivable, related party, net	100,915	205,915
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	2,097,402	1,252,396
<b>TOTAL CURRENT ASSETS</b>	<u>2,363,934</u>	<u>1,500,917</u>
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>\$ 2,363,934</u>	<u>\$ 1,500,917</u>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>		
<b>CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>		
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	\$ 503,982	\$ 1,104,669
Related party payable	81,167	79,333
<b>TOTAL CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>	<u>585,149</u>	<u>1,184,002</u>
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>	<u>585,149</u>	<u>1,184,002</u>
<b>COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES</b>		
<b>STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>		
Convertible Preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value: 10,000,000 shares authorized; Series A Preferred Stock, \$0.0001 stated value per share, 1,360,000 shares designated; 750,000 shares issued and outstanding as of October 31, 2019 and April 30, 2019	75	75
Common stock, \$0.0001 par value: 300,000,000 shares authorized; 63,662,858 and 61,878,465 shares issued and outstanding as of October 31, 2019 and April 30, 2019, respectively	6,366	6,188
Additional paid-in capital	25,803,976	22,686,285
Note receivable – related party for common stock	(15,000,000)	(15,000,000)
Accumulated deficit	(9,031,632)	(7,375,633)
<b>TOTAL STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>	<u>1,778,785</u>	<u>316,915</u>
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>	<u>\$ 2,363,934</u>	<u>\$ 1,500,917</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**Statements of Operations**  
**(unaudited)**

	<b>For the Six Months Ended October 31,</b>	
	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>
<b>OPERATING EXPENSES</b>		
Research and development	\$ 399,916	\$ 2,757,776
General and administrative	1,264,976	376,232
Total operating expenses	<u>1,664,892</u>	<u>3,134,008</u>
<b>Loss from operations</b>	<u>(1,664,892)</u>	<u>(3,134,008)</u>
<b>OTHER INCOME</b>		
Interest income - related party	8,893	83,767
<b>Total other income</b>	<u>8,893</u>	<u>83,767</u>
<b>NET LOSS</b>	<u>\$ (1,655,999)</u>	<u>\$ (3,050,241)</u>
<b>Basic and diluted net loss per common share</b>	<u>\$ (0.02)</u>	<u>\$ (0.06)</u>
<b>Basic and diluted weighted average common shares outstanding</b>	<u>70,408,014</u>	<u>50,958,276</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**Statements of Cash Flows**  
**(unaudited)**

	<b>For the Six Months Ended October 31,</b>	
	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>
Cash flows from operating activities:		
Net loss	\$ (1,655,999)	\$ (3,050,241)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Accretion of original issue discount on notes receivable – related party	-	5,250
Issuance of common stock for license fees	-	2,227,923
Stock-based compensation to employees and consultants	829,534	-
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(356,444)	101,483
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	(600,687)	284,394
Related party payable	1,834	-
Net cash used in operating activities	(1,781,762)	(431,191)
Cash flows from investing activities:		
Loans to related party	-	(558,000)
Proceeds from repayment of loans to related party	105,000	386,000
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities	105,000	(172,000)
Cash flows from financing activities:		
Proceeds from issuance of common stock	1,799,773	-
Net cash provided by financing activities	1,799,773	-
Net increase (decrease) in cash	123,011	(603,191)
Cash at beginning of period	42,606	545,001
Cash at end of period	\$ 165,617	\$ (58,190)
Non-cash financing activities:		
Issuance of common stock for subscription receivable	\$ 481,554	\$ -

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity**  
**Six Months Ended October 31, 2019**  
**(unaudited)**

	Series A Convertible Preferred Stock		Common Stock		Additional Paid-In Capital	Note Receivable - Related Party for Common Stock	Accumulated Deficit	Total
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount				
BALANCES, April 30, 2019	750,000	\$ 75	61,878,465	\$ 6,188	\$ 22,686,285	\$ (15,000,000)	\$ (7,375,633)	\$ 316,915
Issuance of common stock	-	-	1,784,393	178	2,288,157	-	-	2,288,335
Stock-based compensation to employees and consultants	-	-	-	-	829,534	-	-	829,534
Net loss	-	-	-	-	-	-	(1,655,999)	(1,655,999)
BALANCES, October 31, 2019	<u>750,000</u>	<u>\$ 75</u>	<u>63,662,858</u>	<u>\$ 6,366</u>	<u>\$ 25,803,976</u>	<u>\$ (15,000,000)</u>	<u>\$ (9,031,632)</u>	<u>\$ 1,778,785</u>

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity**  
**Six Months Ended October 31, 2018**  
**(unaudited)**

	Series A Convertible Preferred Stock		Common Stock		Additional Paid-In Capital	Note Receivable - Related Party for Common Stock	Accumulated Deficit	Total
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount				
BALANCES, April 30, 2018	750,000	\$ 75	49,493,196	\$ 4,949	\$ 4,827,408	\$ -	\$ (2,513,137)	\$ 2,319,295
Issuance of common stock for license fees	-	-	2,227,923	223	2,227,700	-	-	2,227,923
Net loss	-	-	-	-	-	-	(3,050,241)	(3,050,241)
BALANCES, October 31, 2018	<u>750,000</u>	<u>\$ 75</u>	<u>51,721,119</u>	<u>\$ 5,172</u>	<u>\$ 7,055,108</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ (5,563,378)</u>	<u>\$ 1,496,977</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.



**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — Unaudited**

**1. DESCRIPTION OF BUSINESS**

Alzamend Neuro, Inc. (the “Company” or “Alzamend”), is a specialty pharmaceutical company that was formed on February 26, 2016, to develop and commercialize patented intellectual property to prevent, treat and cure Alzheimer’s disease (“Alzheimer’s” or “AD”). The Company has licensed an immunotherapy vaccine peptide that works both as a treatment and vaccine against Alzheimer’s and an ionic cocrystal of lithium to mitigate extreme agitation and forestall other deterioration as displayed by patients with up to moderate AD and possibly other neurodegenerative diseases (collectively, the “Technology”).

The Company is devoting substantially all its efforts towards research and development of its Technology and raising capital. The Company has not generated any product revenue to date. The Company has financed its operations to date primarily through debt financings and through the sale of its Common Stock. The Company expects to continue to incur net losses in the foreseeable future.

**2. LIQUIDITY, GOING CONCERN AND MANAGEMENT’S PLANS**

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared on the basis that the Company will continue as a going concern. As of October 31, 2019, the Company had cash of \$165,617 and an accumulated deficit of \$9,031,632. The Company has incurred recurring losses for the six months ended October 31, 2019 totaling \$1,655,999. In the past, the Company has financed its operations principally through issuances of promissory notes and equity securities.

The Company expects to continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future and needs to raise additional capital until it is able to generate revenues from operations sufficient to fund its development and commercial operations. Based on our current business plan, we believe that our cash and cash equivalents at October 31, 2019, are not sufficient to meet our anticipated cash requirements during the twelve-month period subsequent to the issuance of the financial statements included in this Semiannual Report on Form 1-SA. Management believes that the Company has access to capital resources through potential public or private issuance of debt or equity securities. However, the Company cannot be certain that additional funding will be available on acceptable terms, or at all, in which case it may have to significantly delay, scale back or discontinue the development and/or commercialization of its product. The Company may also be required to (a) seek collaborators for its product at an earlier stage than otherwise would be desirable and on terms that are less favorable than might otherwise be available; or (b) relinquish or otherwise dispose of rights to Technology or its product that the Company would otherwise seek to deploy or commercialize. These matters raise substantial doubt about the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern. The accompanying financial statements do not include any adjustments that might become necessary should the Company be unable to continue as a going concern.

**3. SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

**Basis of Presentation**

The financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”) and pursuant to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission. Certain information and footnote disclosures normally included in financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP have been omitted pursuant to such rules and regulations. In management’s opinion, the accompanying statements reflect adjustments necessary to present fairly the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows for those periods indicated, and contain adequate disclosure to make the information presented not misleading. Adjustments included herein are of a normal, recurring nature unless otherwise disclosed in the footnotes. The financial statements and notes thereto should be read in conjunction with the Company’s audited financial statements and notes thereto for the year ended April 30, 2019 included in the Company’s Annual Report on Form 1-K, as filed with the SEC on August 28, 2019. The accompanying balance sheet at October 31, 2019 has been derived from the audited balance sheet at April 30, 2019 contained in the above referenced Form 1-K. Results of operations for interim periods are not necessarily indicative of the results of operations for a full year.

On May 29, 2018, the board of directors approved a 1-for-4 Reverse Stock Split of the Company’s Common Stock. The Reverse Stock Split became effective on December 13, 2018. As a result of the Reverse Stock Split, every four (4) shares of the Company’s pre-Reverse Stock Split Common Stock were combined and reclassified into one share of the Company’s Common Stock. The number of shares of Common Stock subject to outstanding options and warrants were also reduced by a factor of four as of December 13, 2018. All historical share and per-share amounts reflected throughout the financial statements and other financial information in this filing have been adjusted to reflect the Reverse Stock Split. The authorized capital and par value per share of the Company’s Common Stock was not affected by the Reverse Stock Split.

## **Accounting Estimates**

The preparation of financial statements, in conformity with U.S. GAAP, requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. The Company's critical accounting policies that involve significant judgment and estimates include share-based compensation and valuation of deferred income taxes. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

## **Cash and Cash Equivalents**

The Company considers all highly liquid investments with a remaining maturity of three months or less when purchased to be cash equivalents. As of October 31, 2019 and April 30, 2019, the Company had no cash equivalents.

## **Fair Value of Financial Instruments**

The Company's financial instruments are accounts payable, notes payable and notes payable, related party. The recorded values of accounts payable approximate their fair values based on their short-term nature. The recorded values of notes payable and notes payable, related party are recorded at their carrying value, net of any unamortized debt discount, which approximates their fair value based on their short-term nature.

U.S. GAAP defines fair value as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. Valuation techniques used to measure fair value must maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs. The fair value hierarchy is based on three levels of inputs that may be used to measure fair value, of which the first two are considered observable and the last is considered unobservable:

Level 1: Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

Level 2: Inputs other than Level 1 that are observable, either directly or indirectly, such as quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities; quoted prices in markets that are not active; or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets or liabilities.

Level 3 assumptions: Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to the fair value of the assets or liabilities including liabilities resulting from imbedded derivatives associated with certain warrants to purchase Common Stock.

As of October 31, 2019 and April 30, 2019, the Company did not have any assets or liabilities recorded at fair value on a recurring or non-recurring basis.

## **Income Taxes**

The Company determines its income taxes under the asset and liability method. Under the asset and liability approach, deferred income tax assets and liabilities are calculated and recorded based upon the future tax consequences of temporary differences by applying enacted statutory tax rates applicable to future periods for differences between the financial statements carrying amounts and the tax basis of existing assets and liabilities. Generally, deferred income taxes are classified as current or non-current in accordance with the classification of the related asset or liability. Those not related to an asset or a liability are classified as current or non-current depending on the periods in which the temporary differences are expected to reverse. Valuation allowances are provided for significant deferred income tax assets when it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized.

The Company recognizes tax liabilities by prescribing a minimum probability threshold that a tax position must meet before a financial statement benefit is recognized and also provides guidance on de-recognition, measurement, classification, interest and penalties, accounting in interim periods, disclosure and transition. The minimum threshold is defined as a tax position that is more likely than not to be sustained upon examination by the applicable taxing authority, including resolution of any related appeals or litigation processes, based on the technical merits of the position. The tax benefit to be recognized is measured as the largest amount of benefit that is greater than fifty percent likely of being realized upon ultimate settlement. To the extent that the final tax outcome of these matters is different than the amount recorded, such differences impact income tax expense in the period in which such determination is made. Interest and penalties, if any, related to accrued liabilities for potential tax assessments are included in income tax expense. U.S. GAAP also requires management to evaluate tax positions taken by the Company and recognize a liability if the Company has taken uncertain tax positions that more likely than not would not be sustained upon examination by applicable taxing authorities. Management of the Company has evaluated tax positions taken by the Company and has concluded that as of October 31, 2019, there are no uncertain tax positions taken, or expected to be taken, that would require recognition of a liability that would require disclosure in the financial statements.

## Research and Development Expenses

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred. Research and development costs consist of scientific consulting fees and lab supplies, as well as fees paid to other entities that conduct certain research and development activities on behalf of the Company.

The Company has acquired and may continue to acquire the rights to develop and commercialize new product candidates from third parties. The upfront payments to acquire license, product or rights, as well as any future milestone payments, are immediately recognized as research and development expense provided that there is no alternative future use of the rights in other research and development projects.

## Stock-Based Compensation

The Company accounts for stock option awards in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification (“FASB ASC”) Topic No. 718, *Compensation-Stock Compensation*. Under FASB ASC Topic No. 718, compensation expense related to stock-based payments is recorded over the requisite service period based on the grant date fair value of the awards. Compensation previously recorded for unvested stock options that are forfeited is reversed upon forfeiture. The Company uses the Black-Scholes option pricing model for determining the estimated fair value for stock-based awards. The Black-Scholes model requires the use of assumptions which determine the fair value of stock-based awards, including the option’s expected term and the price volatility of the underlying stock.

## Loss per Common Share

The Company utilizes FASB ASC Topic No. 260, *Earnings per Share*. Basic loss per share is computed by dividing loss available to common shareholders by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding. Diluted loss per share is computed similar to basic loss per share except that the denominator is increased to include the number of additional common shares that would have been outstanding if the potential common shares had been issued and if the additional common shares were dilutive. Diluted loss per common share reflects the potential dilution that could occur if convertible preferred stock, options and warrants were to be exercised or converted or otherwise resulted in the issuance of Common Stock that then shared in the earnings of the entity.

Since the effects of outstanding options, warrants and convertible preferred stock are anti-dilutive in the period presented, shares of Common Stock underlying these instruments have been excluded from the computation of loss per common share.

The following sets forth the number of shares of Common Stock underlying outstanding convertible preferred stock, options and warrants:

	For the Six Months Ended October 31,	
	2019	2018
Series A convertible preferred stock	15,000,000	15,000,000
Stock options	17,475,000	7,500,000
Warrants	6,652,035	43,000
	<u>39,127,035</u>	<u>22,543,000</u>

## Reclassifications

Certain prior period amounts have been reclassified for comparative purposes to conform to the current period financial statement presentation. These reclassifications had no effect on previously reported results of operations.

## Recent Accounting Standards

From time to time, new accounting pronouncements are issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”), or other standard setting bodies and adopted by the Company as of the specified effective date. Unless otherwise discussed, the impact of recently issued standards that are not yet effective are not expected to have a material impact on the Company’s financial position or results of operations upon adoption.

In February 2016, the FASB issued Accounting Standards Update (“ASU”) No. 2016-02, *Leases* (“Topic 842” or “ASU 2016-02”), which supersedes the guidance in former ASC 840, *Leases*. The FASB issued further updates to this guidance in July 2018 through ASU 2018-10, *Codification Improvements to Topic 842, Leases* and ASU 2018-11, *Leases (Topic 842): Targeted Improvements*. The new standard requires lessees to apply a dual approach, classifying leases as either finance or operating leases based on the principle of whether or not the lease is effectively a financed purchase by the lessee. This classification will determine whether lease expense is recognized based on an effective interest method or on a straight-line basis over the term of the lease. A lessee is also required to record a right-of-use asset and a lease liability for all leases with a term of greater than 12 months regardless of their classification. Leases with a term of 12 months or less will be accounted for similar to existing guidance for operating leases today. The standard is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018, with early adoption permitted, and is required to be adopted using a modified retrospective approach. The Company adopted this standard on May 1, 2019. Upon adoption of this subtopic, the impact was immaterial on its financial position, results of operations, cash flows, or financial statement disclosures as our only lease, which is related to office space, has a term of less than 12 months.

In July 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-11, *Earnings per Share (Topic 260), Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity (Topic 480), Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815)* (“ASU 2017-11”). ASU 2017-11 consists of two parts. The amendments in Part I of this update change the classification analysis of certain equity-linked financial instruments (or embedded features) with down round features. When determining whether certain financial instruments should be classified as liabilities or equity instruments, a down round feature no longer precludes equity classification when assessing whether the instrument is indexed to an entity’s own stock. The amendments also clarify existing disclosure requirements for equity-classified instruments. As a result, a freestanding equity-linked financial instrument (or embedded conversion option) no longer would be accounted for as a derivative liability at fair value as a result of the existence of a down round feature. For freestanding equity classified financial instruments, the amendments require entities that present earnings per share (“EPS”) in accordance with Topic 260 to recognize the effect of the down round feature when it is triggered. That effect is treated as a dividend and as a reduction of income available to common stockholders in basic EPS. Convertible instruments with embedded conversion options that have down round features are now subject to the specialized guidance for contingent beneficial conversion features (in Subtopic 470-20, Debt—Debt with Conversion and Other Options), including related EPS guidance (in Topic 260). The amendments in Part II of this update re-characterize the indefinite deferral of certain provisions of Topic 480 that now are presented as pending content in the Codification, to a scope exception. Those amendments do not have an accounting effect. For public business entities, the amendments in Part I of this update are effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2018. For all other entities, the amendments in Part I of this update are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2020. Early adoption is permitted for all entities, including adoption in an interim period. If an entity early adopts the amendments in an interim period, any adjustments should be reflected as of the beginning of the fiscal year that includes that interim period. The amendments in Part II of this update do not require any transition guidance because those amendments do not have an accounting effect. The Company chose to early adopt ASU 2017-11 for the fiscal year ended April 30, 2019. The early adoption allowed the Company to reduce the cost and complexity of accounting for financial instruments that, due to down round provisions, would otherwise require fair value measurement each reporting period and eliminated the corresponding impact and unnecessary volatility in reported earnings created by the revaluation when the Company’s share value changes.

In June 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-07, *Improvements to Nonemployee Share-Based Payment Accounting*, (“ASU 2018-07”). ASU 2018-07 simplifies the accounting for share-based payments granted to nonemployees for goods and services. Under ASU 2018-07, most of the guidance on such payments to nonemployees would be aligned with the requirements for share-based payments granted to employees. The changes take effect for public companies for fiscal years starting after Dec. 15, 2018, including interim periods within that fiscal year. The adoption of this standard did not have a material impact on the Company’s financial position or results of operations.

The Company has considered all other recently issued accounting standards and does not believe the adoption of such standards will have a material impact on its financial statements.

#### **4. NOTE RECEIVABLE, RELATED PARTY, NET**

On April 10, 2018, Avalanche International Corp., a related party (“Avalanche”), issued a promissory note (the “AVLP Note”) to the Company. Pursuant to the AVLP Note, the Company agreed to provide Avalanche a loan of up to \$995,500 for a period ending on April 30, 2019, subject to the terms and conditions stated in the AVLP Note. The AVLP Note accrues interest at 10% per annum and includes a 10% original issue discount. During the six months ended October 31, 2019, the Company received payments on loans to Avalanche in the principal amount of \$105,000. During the six months ended October 31, 2018, the Company provided loans to Avalanche in the principal amount of \$558,000, of which \$386,000 was repaid as of October 31, 2018. As of October 31, 2019, the balance of the loan receivable from Avalanche is \$100,915.

In accordance with FASB ASC No. 310, Receivables (“ASC 310”), the Company accounts for its AVLP Note at amortized cost, which represents the amount at which the promissory note was acquired, adjusted for accrued interest and accretion of original issue discount. Interest is accreted using the effective interest method. The Company records interest on an accrual basis and recognizes it as earned in accordance with the contractual terms of the promissory note. During the six months ended October 31, 2019, the Company recorded contractual interest income from the stated interest rate of \$8,893. During the six months ended October 31, 2018, the Company recorded \$20,000 of interest income for the discount accretion and recorded contractual interest income from the stated interest rate of \$38,517.

On April 30, 2019, the Company and Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC (“ALSF”) entered into a securities purchase agreement (the “SPA”) for the purchase of 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$15,000,000, or \$1.50 per share with 5,000,000 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance. The total purchase price of \$15,000,000 was in the form of a non-interest bearing note receivable with a 12-month term from ALSF, a related party. In November 2019, the term of the note receivable was extended to December 31, 2020. The note is secured by a pledge of the purchased shares. As the note receivable from ALSF is related to the issuance of common stock, it is recorded as an offset to additional paid-in capital.

## 5. PREPAID EXPENSES AND OTHER CURRENT ASSETS

Prepaid expenses and other current assets are as follows:

	October 31, 2019	April 30, 2019
Prepaid assets	\$ 1,527,517	\$ 1,172,957
Subscription receivable	481,554	-
Interest receivable	72,121	63,229
Other receivables	16,210	16,210
Total prepaid expenses and other current assets	<u>\$ 2,097,402</u>	<u>\$ 1,252,396</u>

## 6. STOCK-BASED COMPENSATION

On April 30, 2016, the Company's shareholders approved the Company's 2016 Stock Incentive Plan (the "Plan"). The Plan provides for the issuance of a maximum of 12,500,000 shares of the Company's Common Stock to be offered to the Company's directors, officers, employees, and consultants. Options granted under the Plan have an exercise price equal to or greater than the fair value of the underlying Common Stock at the date of grant and become exercisable based on a vesting schedule determined at the date of grant. The options expire between 5 and 10 years from the date of grant. Restricted stock awards granted under the Plan are subject to a vesting period determined at the date of grant.

During the six months ended October 31, 2018, the Company did not grant any equity-based awards from the Plan and did not recognize any stock-based compensation expense from previous grants made pursuant to the Plan. Pursuant to the terms of the License Agreement, during the six months ended October 31, 2018, the Company issued 2,227,923 shares of its Common Stock and recognized \$2,227,923 in license fees.

All options that the Company grants are granted at the per share fair value on the grant date. Vesting of options differs based on the terms of each option. The Company has valued the options at their date of grant utilizing the Black Scholes option pricing model. As of the issuance of these financial statements, there was not an active public market for the Company's shares. Accordingly, the fair value of the underlying options was determined based on the historical volatility data of similar companies, considering the industry, products and market capitalization of such other entities. The risk-free interest rate used in the calculations is based on the implied yield available on U.S. Treasury issues with an equivalent term approximating the expected life of the options as calculated using the simplified method. The expected life of the options used was based on the contractual life of the option granted. Stock-based compensation is a non-cash expense because the Company settles these obligations by issuing shares of the Company's Common Stock from its authorized shares instead of settling such obligations with cash payments.

A summary of stock option activity for the period April 30, 2019 to October 31, 2019, is presented below:

	Outstanding Options				
	Shares Available for Grant	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Life (years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value
April 30, 2019	4,290,000	15,710,000	\$ 0.52	7.51	\$ 15,352,000
Options granted	(1,800,000)	1,800,000	\$ 1.40		
Options cancelled	35,000	(35,000)	\$ 1.00		
October 31, 2019	<u>2,525,000</u>	<u>17,475,000</u>	<u>\$ 0.61</u>	7.10	\$ 15,486,340
Options vested and expected to vest at October 31, 2019		<u>15,475,000</u>	<u>\$ 0.56</u>	7.69	\$ 14,609,500
Options exercisable at October 31, 2019		<u>9,191,134</u>	<u>\$ 0.19</u>	6.85	\$ 12,027,462

The aggregate intrinsic value in the table above represents the total pretax intrinsic value (i.e., the difference between the fair value price on the respective date and the exercise price, times the number of shares) that would have been received by the option holders had all option holders exercised their options. There have not been any options exercised during the six months ended October 31, 2019.

### Stock options granted to employees and consultants

The estimated fair value of stock options granted to employees and consultants during the six months ended October 31, 2019, was calculated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model using the following assumptions:

	For the Six Months Ended October 31, 2019
Weighted average risk-free interest rate	2.25%
Weighted average life (in years)	5.2
Volatility	70%
Expected dividend yield	0.00%
Weighted average grant-date fair value per share of options granted	\$ 0.59

*Expected Term:* The expected term represents the period that the options granted are expected to be outstanding and is determined using the simplified method (based on the mid-point between the vesting date and the end of the contractual term).

*Expected Volatility:* The Company uses an average historical stock price volatility of comparable public companies within the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industry that were deemed to be representative of future stock price trends as the Company does not have trading history for its common stock. The Company will continue to apply this process until a sufficient amount of historical information regarding the volatility of its own stock price becomes available.

*Risk-Free Interest Rate:* The Company based the risk-free interest rate over the expected term of the options based on the constant maturity rate of U.S. Treasury securities with similar maturities as of the date of the grant.

*Expected Dividend:* The Company has not paid and does not anticipate paying any dividends in the near future. Therefore, the expected dividend yield was zero.

### Performance-contingent stock options granted to employee

In November 2018, the Board of Directors granted 2,000,000 performance-contingent options to the Chief Executive Officer. These options have an exercise price of \$1.00 per share.

These options have two separate performance triggers for vesting based upon our therapies achieving certain FDA approval milestones within a specified timeframe. By definition, the performance condition in these options can only be achieved after the performance condition of FDA approval has been achieved. As such, the requisite service period is based on the estimated period over which the market condition can be achieved. When a performance goal is deemed to be probable of achievement, time-based vesting and recognition of stock-based compensation expense commences. In the event any of the milestones are not achieved by the specified timelines, such vesting award will terminate and no longer be exercisable with respect to that portion of the shares. The maximum potential expense associated with the performance-contingent awards is \$1.2 million of general and administrative expense if all of the performance conditions are achieved as stated in the option agreement. Due to the significant risks and uncertainties associated with FDA approvals, through October 31, 2019, the Company believes that the achievement of the requisite performance conditions is not probable and, as a result, no compensation cost has been recognized for these awards.

### Stock-based compensation expense

The Company's results of operations include expenses relating to stock-based compensation as follows:

	For the Six Months Ended October 31,	
	2019	2018
Research and development	\$ 115,873	\$ -
General and administrative	713,661	-
Total	<u>\$ 829,534</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

As of October 31, 2019, total unamortized stock-based compensation expense related to unvested employee and non-employee awards that are expected to vest was \$4.4 million. The weighted-average period over which such stock-based compensation expense will be recognized is approximately 3.1 years.

## 7. WARRANTS

In conjunction with a private offering of securities between June 25, 2019 and October 31, 2019, the Company issued 878,358 warrants with an exercise price of \$3.00 per share. In addition, the Company issued to the placement agent of the private offering 175,672 warrants to purchase a number of shares of Common Stock (the “Placement Agent Warrants”), a figure equal to ten percent (10%) of the number of shares of Common Stock sold in the private offering. The Placement Agent Warrants are exercisable for a period of five years after their date of issuance, have an exercise price of \$1.75 per share and contain provisions pertaining to cashless exercise, standard anti-dilution protection and piggyback registration rights. The grant date fair value of the Placement Agent Warrants was \$95,467 and was recorded within additional paid-in capital. The estimated fair value of the Placement Agent Warrants, was calculated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model using the following assumptions:

	For the Six Months Ended October 31, 2019
Risk-free interest rate	1.52%
Expected term (in years)	2.5
Volatility	66%
Dividend yield	--

The following table summarizes information about Common Stock warrants outstanding at October 31, 2019:

Outstanding				Exercisable	
Exercise Price	Number Outstanding	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Life (years)	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Number Exercisable	Weighted Average Exercise Price
\$1.00	500,000	4.3	\$1.00	58,333	\$1.00
\$1.20	5,500	0.8	\$1.20	3,972	\$1.20
\$1.75	175,672	5.0	\$1.75	0	\$1.75
\$3.00	5,970,863	4.4	\$3.00	532,361	\$3.00
<u>\$1.00 - \$3.00</u>	<u>6,652,035</u>	<u>4.8</u>	<u>\$2.82</u>	<u>594,666</u>	<u>\$2.79</u>

## 8. OTHER RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

Prior to hiring our current executive team, management services were provided by our two previous executive officers and Executive Chairman pursuant to the terms of an MSA entered into with Avalanche, a related party, on May 1, 2016. Avalanche provided management, consulting and financial services to us. Such services included advice and assistance concerning any and all aspects of operations, planning and financing of Alzamend and conducting relations with accountants, attorneys, financial advisors and other professionals. The term of the MSA, as amended, was for the period May 1, 2016 to December 31, 2017, and was extended by written agreement. We initially paid \$40,000 per month for these services and, beginning February 2017, began paying \$20,000 per month. During the six months ended October 31, 2018, we recognized \$120,000 in management fees in connection with this agreement. The MSA expired as of December 31, 2018.

On April 10, 2018, Avalanche issued the AVL Note to the Company. Pursuant to the AVL Note, the Company agreed to provide Avalanche a loan of up to \$995,500 for a period ending on April 30, 2019, subject to the terms and conditions stated in the AVL Note. The AVL Note accrues interest at 10% per annum and includes a 10% original issue discount. During the six months ended October 31, 2019, the Company received payments on loans to Avalanche in the principal amount of \$105,000. During the six months ended October 31, 2018, the Company provided loans to Avalanche in the principal amount of \$558,000, of which \$386,000 was repaid as of October 31, 2018. As of October 31, 2019, the balance of the loan receivable from Avalanche is \$100,915.

In accordance with ASC No. 310, Receivables (“ASC 310”), the Company accounts for its AVL Note at amortized cost, which represents the amount at which the promissory note was acquired, adjusted for accrued interest and accretion of original issue discount. Interest is accreted using the effective interest method. The Company records interest on an accrual basis and recognizes it as earned in accordance with the contractual terms of the promissory note. During the six months ended October 31, 2019, the Company recorded contractual interest income from the stated interest rate of \$8,893. During the six months ended October 31, 2018, the Company recorded \$20,000 of interest income for the discount accretion and recorded contractual interest income from the stated interest rate of \$38,517 (See Note 4).

On April 30, 2019, the Company and ALSF entered into a SPA for the purchase of 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$15,000,000, or \$1.50 per share with 5,000,000 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance. The total purchase price of \$15,000,000 was in the form of a non-interest bearing note receivable with a 12-month term from ALSF, a related party. In November 2019, the term of the note receivable was extended to December 31, 2020. The note is secured by a pledge of the purchased shares. As the note receivable from ALSF is related to the issuance of common stock, it is recorded as an offset to additional paid-in capital.

## 9. NOTES PAYABLE

During January 2017, the Company entered into a promissory note and received net proceeds of \$65,000. As consideration for this loan, the Company issued a promissory note in the aggregate principal amount of \$75,000, which included an OID and fees of \$10,000. The OID was amortized as non-cash interest expense over the term of the debt. The promissory note accrued interest at 15% per year. This loan was repaid during the six months ended October 31, 2018.

## 10. EQUITY TRANSACTIONS

The Company is authorized to issue 10,000,000 shares of Preferred Stock \$0.0001 par value. The Board of Directors has designated 1,360,000 shares as Series A Convertible Preferred Stock (the "Series A Preferred Shares"). The rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions on the remaining authorized 8,640,000 shares of Preferred Stock have not been determined. The Company's Board of Directors is authorized to create additional series of preferred shares and determine the number of shares, as well as the rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions granted to or imposed upon any series of preferred shares. As of April 30, 2019, there were 750,000 shares of Series A Preferred Shares and no other shares of Preferred Stock issued or outstanding.

### *Series A Preferred Stock*

The Series A Preferred Shares convey no dividend rights except as may be declared by the Board in its sole and absolute discretion, out of funds legally available for that purpose. Holders of Series A Preferred Shares are entitled to 50 non-cumulative votes per share on all matters presented to our stockholders for action. In addition, the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the Series A Preferred then outstanding, voting as a separate class, is required for the Company to:

- amend, alter or repeal any of the preferences or rights of the Series A Preferred Shares;
- authorize any reclassification of the Series A Preferred Shares;
- increase the authorized number of Series A Preferred Shares; or
- create any class or series of shares ranking prior to the Series A Preferred Shares as to dividends or liquidation.

The Series A Preferred Shares are not entitled to preemptive rights. In the event of any dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary, the Holders of Series A Preferred Shares shall be entitled to participate in any distribution out of the assets of the Company on an equal basis per share with the holders of the Common Stock.

Holders of Series A Preferred Shares have the right to convert their shares into shares of Common Stock at any time at a conversion rate equal to twenty (20) shares of Common Stock for every one (1) Series A Preferred Share. The conversion rate is not subject to anti-dilution adjustments.

### *Common Stock*

On May 27, 2016, the Company's Board of Directors approved a Certificate of Amendment to the Company's Certificate of Incorporation increasing its authorized shares of Common Stock from 150,000,000 to 300,000,000.

On March 20, 2019, we entered into securities purchase agreements for the purchase of 157,346 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$236,023, or \$1.50 per share with 78,672 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance. The purchase price of \$236,023 was paid in cash. In May 2019, an additional 27,667 shares of Common Stock were sold under the same terms for a total purchase price of \$41,501.

On April 30, 2019, the Company and ALSF entered into a SPA for the purchase of 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$15,000,000, or \$1.50 per share with 5,000,000 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance. The total purchase price of \$15,000,000 was in the form of a non-interest bearing note receivable with a 12-month term from ALSF, a related party. In November 2019, the term of the note receivable was extended to December 31, 2020. The note is secured by a pledge of the purchased shares. Pursuant to the SPA, ALSF is entitled to full ratchet anti-dilution protection, most-favored nation status, denying the Company the right to enter into a variable rate transaction absent its consent, a right to participate in any future financing the Company may consummate and to have all the shares of Common Stock to which it is entitled under the SPA registered under the Securities Act within 180 days of the final closing of an initial public offering.



## 2019 Placement Agreement

Between June 25, 2019 and October 31, 2019, the Company entered into subscription agreements for the purchase of 1,756,726 units at \$1.50 for each unit purchased pursuant to its 2019 private offering (the “Private Offering”). Each unit consists of one (1) share of Common Stock and one (1) warrant to purchase one half (0.5) share of Common Stock. In aggregate, the 1,756,726 units represents 1,756,726 shares of Common Stock and 878,363 warrants with an exercise price of \$3.00 per share for an aggregate purchase price of \$2,635,089, or \$1.50 per share. The Private Offering was conducted pursuant to the terms of a Confidential Private Placement Memorandum dated June 12, 2019 (the “2019 PPM”). As of October 31, 2019, in conjunction with the 2019 PPM, the Company incurred \$395,263 in placement fees resulting in net proceeds to the Company of \$2,239,826.

Pursuant to the 2019 Placement Agreement effective as of June 10, 2019 entered into in connection with the 2019 PPM, the Company has agreed with the Placement Agent to certain cash compensation payable to the Placement Agent and, without limitation, to the following:

### Placement Agent Compensation:

Upon the initial closing of the 2019 PPM the Company must pay to the Placement Agent a non-refundable fee of Twenty-Five Thousand Dollars (\$25,000) and issue to the Placement Agent 500,000 shares of Common Stock.

Further, the Company has issued to the Placement Agent warrants to purchase a number of shares of Common Stock (the “Placement Agent Warrants”) equal to ten percent (10%) of the number of shares of Common Stock sold in the 2019 PPM. The Placement Agent Warrants are exercisable for a period of five (5) years after their date of issuance, have an exercise price of \$1.75 per share and contain provisions pertaining to cashless exercise, standard anti-dilution protection and piggyback registration rights.

### Use of Proceeds:

The Company will apply the net proceeds from the Offering primarily: (i) for licensing and other fees to the University and the Byrd Institute; (ii) to pay certain fees to the FDA; (iii) to pay for third-party research; (iv) to pay certain marketing-related fees, and (v) for working capital.

### Incurrence of Debt:

During the two (2) years following the final Closing, the Company will not, without the prior written consent of the Placement Agent, incur indebtedness for borrowed money in an aggregate amount in excess of \$250,000.

### Additional Shares Issuable to the Placement Agent, its Affiliates and the Investors in this Offering

The Company has agreed to take certain actions within prescribed time periods. If the Company fails to do so on a timely basis, the Company has agreed to issue to the Placement Agent, its Affiliates and the investors in the 2019 PPM a significant number of additional shares of Common Stock.

### Future Sales of Securities and Conversion of the Series A Preferred Stock

During the period commencing on the final Closing and ending two years thereafter, provided that no Qualified Financing (as defined below) has occurred, if (i) the Company issues any shares of Common Stock or Common Stock equivalents at a per share price below \$1.50 absent the Placement Agent’s consent, or (ii) any holder of the Company’s Series A Preferred Stock elects to convert such shares into Common Stock, then upon any such issuance or conversion, as the case may be, the Placement Agent, its Affiliates and the Investors in this Offering will be entitled to receive a significant number of additional shares of Common Stock (this provision can thus be deemed the functional equivalent of weighted average anti-dilution protection). For purposes of the 2019 Placement Agreement, a “Qualified Financing” means the sale of equity securities by us in a single transaction or a series of related transactions registered under the Securities Act resulting in gross proceeds to us of not less than \$25,000,000.

In addition, during the period commencing on the final Closing and ending two years thereafter, the Company has agreed not to enter into any transactions with Milton C. Ault, our chairman of the board and principal stockholder or any Affiliate (as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act) thereof absent the Placement Agent’s consent. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Placement Agent has consented to our potential entry into an agreement whereby the Company would issue to an Affiliate of Mr. Ault 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock on terms substantially identical to those of the 2019 PPM.

### Failure to File Reports under the Securities Act

In the event that the Company does not file its annual or semiannual reports with the Commission on a timely basis, then the Placement Agent will have the right to designate a replacement for one of our members of our Board for a period of one (1) year following any such failure to file a periodic report on a timely basis, provided that neither Mr. Ault nor William B. Horne shall be subject to this provision.

Employment Agreement with the Chief Executive Officer:

Upon or before the initial Closing of the 2019 PPM, the Company shall have entered into an employment agreement with Stephan Jackman having a term of at least two (2) years.

Corporate Governance:

During the period commencing on the final closing of the 2019 PPM and ending at such time as the Common Stock is listed on a national securities exchange, the Placement Agent will have the right to designate one member of our Board.

Uplisting Agreement:

Pursuant to the Uplisting Agreement effective as of June 10, 2019, the Company has agreed with the Placement Agent as follows:

The Company will engage the Placement Agent as an advisor (in such capacity, the “Advisor”) to, at our request, provide advisory services (the “Services”) to us in connection with a potential public offering (an “IPO”). The Company expects that any such Services rendered would consist principally of advising us on how to properly develop and implement strategies that would enhance our ability to successfully complete an IPO and in connection therewith obtain a listing on a national securities exchange, provided that the Company meets any such exchange’s listing criteria at the applicable time as well as introduce us to appropriate underwriters that would lead or conduct any such IPO.

According to the Uplisting Agreement, the Company will, whether the Company requests its assistance or not, be obligated to issue to the Advisor Five Hundred Thousand (500,000) shares of Common Stock as well as make a cash payment to the Advisor in the amount of \$475,000 once the Company has raised no less than \$1,000,000 in gross proceeds in the 2019 PPM and, in the event that the Company successfully consummates an IPO with an underwriter introduced to us by the Advisor, pay the Advisor a fee equal to two percent (2%) of the gross proceeds raised in the IPO.

If prior to a Qualified Financing the Company issues any shares of Common Stock or Common Stock equivalents at a per share price below \$1.50 absent the Advisor’s consent, then upon any such issuance, the Advisor will be entitled to receive a significant number of additional shares of Common Stock (this provision can, like its counterpart in the 2019 Placement Agreement described above, thus be deemed the functional equivalent of weighted average anti-dilution protection).

In the event that the Company engages in what the Uplisting Agreement refers to as an “Alternative Transaction” during the term of such agreement or for a period of two (2) years thereafter, the Company will be obligated to pay to the Advisor a fee in cash equal to three percent (3%) of the amount of the consideration paid or received by us and/or our stockholders in the Alternative Transaction. For purposes of the Uplisting Agreement, an “Alternative Transaction” means a business combination, including, any merger, acquisition or sale of stock or assets (whether the Company is the acquiring or the acquired entity), joint venture, strategic alliance or other similar transaction, and shall extend to any subsidiary of ours on the same terms as will be applicable to us.

The term of the Uplisting Agreement will be two (2) years, subject to either party’s right to terminate it in the event that the other party to the agreement breaches it in any material way.

**11. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

In accordance with FASB ASC 855-10, the Company has analyzed its operations subsequent to October 31, 2019 and has determined that it does not have any material subsequent events to disclose in these financial statements except for the following:

***Performance option grant***

In November 2019, the Board of Directors granted 4,250,000 performance- and market-contingent awards to members of the senior leadership team. These awards have an exercise price of \$1.50 per share. These awards have multiple separate market triggers for vesting based upon either (i) the successful achievement of stepped target closing prices on a national securities exchange for 90 consecutive trading days later than 180 days after the Company’s initial public offering for its common stock, or (ii) stepped target prices for a change in control transaction. The target prices range from \$15 per share to \$40 per share. In the event any the stock price milestones are not achieved within three years, the unvested portion of the performance options will be reduced by 25%.

## REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Board of Directors and Stockholders of Alzamend Neuro, Inc.

### Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying balance sheets of Alzamend Neuro, Inc. (the “Company”) as of April 30, 2019 and 2018, and the related statements of operations, changes in stockholders’ equity and cash flows for the years then ended and the related notes to the financial statements (collectively, the financial statements). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of April 30, 2019 and 2018, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

### Going Concern Uncertainty

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 2 to the financial statements, the Company has a history of significant recurring losses from operations through April 30, 2019, and does not have sufficient working capital at April 30, 2019 to fund its planned operations during the twelve-month period subsequent to the issuance of these financial statements. This raises substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans in regard to these matters also are described in Note 2. The financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

### Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audit we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ SQUAR MILNER LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2019.

San Diego, California  
August 28, 2019

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**Balance Sheets**

	<u>April 30, 2019</u>	<u>April 30, 2018</u>
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>CURRENT ASSETS</b>		
Cash	\$ 42,606	\$ 545,001
Note receivable, related party, net	205,915	403,333
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	1,252,396	1,467,685
<b>TOTAL CURRENT ASSETS</b>	<u>1,500,917</u>	<u>2,416,019</u>
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>\$ 1,500,917</u>	<u>\$ 2,416,019</u>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>		
<b>CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>		
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	\$ 1,104,669	\$ 90,088
Related party payable	79,333	6,636
<b>TOTAL CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>	<u>1,184,002</u>	<u>96,724</u>
<b>COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (Note 13)</b>		
<b>STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>		
Convertible Preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value: 10,000,000 shares authorized; Series A Convertible Preferred Stock, \$0.0001 stated value per share, 1,360,000 shares designated; 750,000 shares issued and outstanding as of April 30, 2019 and 2018, respectively	75	75
Common stock, \$0.0001 par value: 300,000,000 shares authorized; 61,878,465 and 49,493,196 shares issued and outstanding as of April 30, 2019 and 2018, respectively	6,188	4,949
Additional paid-in capital	22,686,285	4,827,408
Note receivable – related party for common stock	(15,000,000)	-
Accumulated deficit	(7,375,633)	(2,513,137)
<b>TOTAL STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>	<u>316,915</u>	<u>2,319,295</u>
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>	<u>\$ 1,500,917</u>	<u>\$ 2,416,019</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**Statements of Operations**

	<b>For the Year Ended April 30,</b>	
	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>
<b>OPERATING EXPENSES</b>		
Research and development	\$ 3,700,083	\$ 323,403
General and administrative	1,308,800	575,027
Total operating expenses	<u>5,008,883</u>	<u>898,430</u>
<b>Loss from operations</b>	(5,008,883)	(898,430)
<b>OTHER INCOME (EXPENSE), NET</b>		
Interest income - related party	146,387	7,341
Interest expense	-	(30,259)
Interest expense - debt discount	<u>-</u>	<u>(10,315)</u>
<b>Total other income (expense), net</b>	146,387	(33,233)
<b>NET LOSS</b>	<u>\$ (4,862,496)</u>	<u>\$ (931,663)</u>
<b>Basic and diluted net loss per common share</b>	<u>\$ (0.08)</u>	<u>\$ (0.02)</u>
<b>Basic and diluted weighted average common shares outstanding</b>		
	<u>58,843,040</u>	<u>45,389,196</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**Statements of Cash Flows**

	<b>For the Year Ended April 30,</b>	
	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>
Cash flows from operating activities:		
Net loss	\$ (4,862,496)	\$ (931,663)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Interest expense -- debt discount	-	10,315
Legal expense -- debt discount	-	1,809
Accretion of original issue discount on notes receivable -- related party	(36,667)	(3,333)
Issuance of common stock for license fees	2,227,923	218,417
Stock-based compensation to employees and consultants	396,170	-
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	215,289	(1,415,368)
Deferred offering costs	-	75,000
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	1,014,581	(6,877)
Net cash used in operating activities	(1,045,200)	(2,051,700)
Cash flows from investing activities:		
Loans to related party	(558,000)	(840,000)
Proceeds from repayment of loans to related party	792,085	440,000
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities	234,085	(400,000)
Cash flows from financing activities:		
Proceeds from issuance of common stock	236,023	3,615,236
Advances from related party payable	72,697	(259,411)
Proceeds from notes payable, related party	-	138,500
Payments on notes payable	-	(75,000)
Payments on notes payable, related party	-	(427,600)
Net cash provided by financing activities	308,720	2,991,725
Net (decrease) increase in cash	(502,395)	540,025
Cash at beginning of period	545,001	4,976
Cash at end of period	\$ 42,606	\$ 545,001
Supplemental disclosures of cash flow information:		
Cash paid during the period for interest	\$ -	\$ 30,569
Non-cash financing activities:		
Fair value of warrants issued in connection with promissory note	\$ -	\$ 2,235
Issuance of notes payable from related party in payment of accrued expenses	\$ -	\$ 29,000
Issuance of common stock upon conversion of convertible preferred stock	\$ -	\$ 1,220
Issuance of common stock for note receivable -- related party	\$ 15,000,000	\$ -

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity**  
**Years Ended April 30, 2019 and April 30, 2018**

	<b>Series A Convertible Preferred Stock</b>		<b>Common Stock</b>		<b>Additional Paid-In</b>	<b>Note Receivable - Related Party for</b>	<b>Accumulated</b>	
	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Capital</b>	<b>Common Stock</b>	<b>Deficit</b>	<b>Total</b>
BALANCES, April 30, 2017	1,360,000	\$ 136	32,874,342	\$ 3,287	\$ 993,121	\$ -	\$ (1,581,474)	\$ (584,930)
Issuance of common stock	-	-	4,203,887	421	3,614,815	-	-	3,615,236
Issuance of common stock for conversion of Series A preferred stock	(610,000)	(61)	12,200,000	1,220	(1,159)	-	-	-
Issuance of common stock for license fees	-	-	214,967	21	218,396	-	-	218,417
Fair value of warrants issued in connection with promissory note	-	-	-	-	2,235	-	-	2,235
Net loss	-	-	-	-	-	-	(931,663)	(931,663)
BALANCES, April 30, 2018	750,000	75	49,493,196	4,949	4,827,408	-	(2,513,137)	2,319,295
Issuance of common stock	-	-	157,346	16	236,007	-	-	236,023
Issuance of common stock to related party	-	-	10,000,000	1,000	14,999,000	(15,000,000)	-	-
Stock-based compensation to employees and consultants	-	-	-	-	396,170	-	-	396,170
Issuance of common stock for license fees	-	-	2,227,923	223	2,227,700	-	-	2,227,923
Net loss	-	-	-	-	-	-	(4,862,496)	(4,862,496)
BALANCES, April 30, 2019	<u>750,000</u>	<u>\$ 75</u>	<u>61,878,465</u>	<u>\$ 6,188</u>	<u>\$ 22,686,285</u>	<u>\$ (15,000,000)</u>	<u>\$ (7,375,633)</u>	<u>\$ 316,915</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
**NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**1. DESCRIPTION OF BUSINESS**

Alzamend Neuro, Inc. (the “Company” or “Alzamend”), is a specialty pharmaceutical company that was formed on February 26, 2016, to develop and commercialize patented intellectual property to prevent, treat and cure Alzheimer’s disease (“Alzheimer’s” or “AD”). The Company has licensed an immunotherapy vaccine peptide that works both as a treatment and vaccine against Alzheimer’s and an ionic cocrystal of lithium to mitigate extreme agitation and forestall other deterioration as displayed by patients with up to moderate AD and possibly other neurodegenerative diseases (collectively, the “Technology”).

On May 29, 2018, the Company implemented a 1-for-4 Reverse Stock Split of its Common Stock. The Reverse Stock Split became effective on December 13, 2018. As a result of the Reverse Stock Split, every four (4) shares of the Company’s pre-Reverse Stock Split Common Stock were combined and reclassified into one share of the Company’s Common Stock. The number of shares of Common Stock subject to outstanding options and warrants were also reduced by a factor of four as of December 13, 2018; further, their respective exercise prices were increased by a factor of four as of the foregoing date. All historical share and per-share amounts reflected throughout the consolidated financial statements and other financial information in this filing have been adjusted to reflect the Reverse Stock Split. The authorized capital and par value per share of the Company’s Common Stock was not affected by the Reverse Stock Split.

The Company is devoting substantially all its efforts towards research and development of its Technology and raising capital. The Company has not generated any product revenue to date. The Company has financed its operations to date primarily through debt financings and through the sale of its Common Stock. The Company expects to continue to incur net losses in the foreseeable future.

**2. LIQUIDITY, GOING CONCERN AND MANAGEMENT’S PLANS**

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared on the basis that the Company will continue as a going concern. As of April 30, 2019, the Company had cash of \$42,606 and an accumulated deficit of \$7,375,633. The Company has incurred recurring losses and for the year ended April 30, 2019, such losses totaled \$4,862,496. In the past, the Company has financed its operations principally through issuances of promissory notes and equity securities. During the year ended April 30, 2019, the Company continued to obtain additional equity and debt financing.

The Company expects to continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future and needs to raise additional capital until it is able to generate revenues from operations sufficient to fund its development and commercial operations. Based on our current business plan, the Company believes that our cash at April 30, 2019, is not sufficient to meet our anticipated cash requirements during the twelve-month period subsequent to the issuance of the financial statements included in this Offering Circular. Management believes that the Company has access to capital resources through potential public or private issuance of debt or equity securities. However, the Company cannot be certain that additional funding will be available on acceptable terms, or at all, in which case it may have to significantly delay, scale back or discontinue the development and/or commercialization of its product. The Company may also be required to (a) seek collaborators for its product at an earlier stage than otherwise would be desirable and on terms that are less favorable than might otherwise be available; or (b) relinquish or otherwise dispose of rights to technology or its product that the Company would otherwise seek to deploy or commercialize. These matters raise substantial doubt about the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern. The accompanying financial statements do not include any adjustments that might become necessary should the Company be unable to continue as a going concern.

**3. SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

**Basis of Presentation**

The financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”) and pursuant to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission.



## Accounting Estimates

The preparation of financial statements, in conformity with U.S. GAAP, requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Our critical accounting policies that involve significant judgment and estimates include share-based compensation and valuation of deferred income taxes. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

## Cash and Cash Equivalents

The Company considers all highly liquid investments with a remaining maturity of three months or less when purchased to be cash equivalents. The recorded carrying amounts of the Company's cash and cash equivalents approximate their fair value. As of April 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company had no cash equivalents.

## Fair Value of Financial Instruments

Our financial instruments are accounts payable, notes payable and notes payable, related party. The recorded values of accounts payable approximate their fair values based on their short-term nature.

U.S. GAAP defines fair value as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. Valuation techniques used to measure fair value must maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs. The fair value hierarchy is based on three levels of inputs that may be used to measure fair value, of which the first two are considered observable and the last is considered unobservable:

Level 1: Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

Level 2: Inputs other than Level 1 that are observable, either directly or indirectly, such as quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities; quoted prices in markets that are not active; or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets or liabilities.

Level 3 assumptions: Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to the fair value of the assets or liabilities including liabilities resulting from imbedded derivatives associated with certain warrants to purchase Common Stock.

## Income Taxes

The Company determines its income taxes under the asset and liability method. Under the asset and liability approach, deferred income tax assets and liabilities are calculated and recorded based upon the future tax consequences of temporary differences by applying enacted statutory tax rates applicable to future periods for differences between the financial statements carrying amounts and the tax basis of existing assets and liabilities. Generally, deferred income taxes are classified as current or non-current in accordance with the classification of the related asset or liability. Those not related to an asset or a liability are classified as current or non-current depending on the periods in which the temporary differences are expected to reverse. Valuation allowances are provided for significant deferred income tax assets when it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized.

The Company recognizes tax liabilities by prescribing a minimum probability threshold that a tax position must meet before a financial statement benefit is recognized and also provides guidance on de-recognition, measurement, classification, interest and penalties, accounting in interim periods, disclosure and transition. The minimum threshold is defined as a tax position that is more likely than not to be sustained upon examination by the applicable taxing authority, including resolution of any related appeals or litigation processes, based on the technical merits of the position. The tax benefit to be recognized is measured as the largest amount of benefit that is greater than fifty percent likely of being realized upon ultimate settlement. To the extent that the final tax outcome of these matters is different than the amount recorded, such differences impact income tax expense in the period in which such determination is made. Interest and penalties, if any, related to accrued liabilities for potential tax assessments are included in income tax expense. U.S. GAAP also requires management to evaluate tax positions taken by the Company and recognize a liability if the Company has taken uncertain tax positions that more likely than not would not be sustained upon examination by applicable taxing authorities. Management of the Company has evaluated tax positions taken by the Company and has concluded that as of April 30, 2019, there are no uncertain tax positions taken, or expected to be taken, that would require recognition of a liability that would require disclosure in the financial statements.

## Stock-Based Compensation

The Company accounts for stock option awards in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification (“FASB ASC”) Topic No. 718, *Compensation-Stock Compensation*. Under FASB ASC Topic No. 718, compensation expense related to stock-based payments is recorded over the requisite service period based on the grant date fair value of the awards. Compensation previously recorded for unvested stock options that are forfeited is reversed upon forfeiture. The Company uses the Black-Scholes option pricing model for determining the estimated fair value for stock-based awards. The Black-Scholes model requires the use of assumptions which determine the fair value of stock-based awards, including the option’s expected term and the price volatility of the underlying stock.

Our accounting policy for equity instruments issued to consultants and vendors in exchange for goods and services follows the provisions of FASB ASC Topic No. 505-50, *Equity Based Payments to Non-Employees*. Accordingly, the measurement date for the fair value of the equity instruments issued is determined at the earlier of (i) the date at which a commitment for performance by the consultant or vendor is reached or (ii) the date at which the consultant or vendor’s performance is complete. In the case of equity instruments issued to consultants, the fair value of the equity instrument is recognized over the term of the consulting agreement.

## Research and Development Expenses

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred. Research and development costs consist of scientific consulting fees and lab supplies, as well as fees paid to other entities that conduct certain research and development activities on behalf of the Company.

The Company has acquired and may continue to acquire the rights to develop and commercialize new product candidates from third parties. The upfront payments to acquire license, product or rights, as well as any future milestone payments, are immediately recognized as research and development expense provided that there is no alternative future use of the rights in other research and development projects.

## Loss per Common Share

The Company utilizes FASB ASC Topic No. 260, *Earnings per Share*. Basic loss per share is computed by dividing loss available to common shareholders by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding. Diluted loss per share is computed similar to basic loss per share except that the denominator is increased to include the number of additional common shares that would have been outstanding if the potential common shares had been issued and if the additional common shares were dilutive. Diluted loss per common share reflects the potential dilution that could occur if convertible preferred stock, options and warrants were to be exercised or converted or otherwise resulted in the issuance of Common Stock that then shared in the earnings of the entity. The Company has included 7,500,000 stock options, with an exercise price of \$0.0004, in its loss per share calculation for the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018.

Since the effects of outstanding options, warrants and convertible preferred stock are anti-dilutive in the period presented, shares of Common Stock underlying these instruments have been excluded from the computation of loss per common share.

The following sets forth the number of shares of Common Stock underlying outstanding convertible preferred stock, options and warrants:

	For the Year Ended April 30,	
	2019	2018
Series A convertible preferred stock	15,000,000	15,000,000
Stock options (1)	8,210,000	-
Warrants	5,584,172	43,000
	<u>28,794,172</u>	<u>15,043,000</u>

(1) The Company has excluded 7,500,000 stock options, with an exercise price of \$0.0004, from its anti-dilutive securities.

## Reclassifications

Certain prior period amounts have been reclassified for comparative purposes to conform to the current period financial statement presentation. These reclassifications had no effect on previously reported results of operations.

## Recent Accounting Standards

From time to time, new accounting pronouncements are issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board, (“FASB”), or other standard setting bodies and adopted by the Company as of the specified effective date. Unless otherwise discussed, the impact of recently issued standards that are not yet effective will not have a material impact on the Company’s financial position or results of operations upon adoption.

In February 2016, the FASB issued No. 2016-02, *Leases* (“Topic 842” or “ASU 2016-02”), which supersedes the guidance in former ASC 840, *Leases*. The FASB issued further updates to this guidance in July 2018 through ASU 2018-10, *Codification Improvements to Topic 842, Leases* and ASU 2018-11, *Leases (Topic 842): Targeted Improvements*. The new standard requires lessees to apply a dual approach, classifying leases as either finance or operating leases based on the principle of whether or not the lease is effectively a financed purchase by the lessee. This classification will determine whether lease expense is recognized based on an effective interest method or on a straight-line basis over the term of the lease. A lessee is also required to record a right-of-use asset and a lease liability for all leases with a term of greater than 12 months regardless of their classification. Leases with a term of 12 months or less will be accounted for similar to existing guidance for operating leases today. The standard is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018, with early adoption permitted, and is required to be adopted using a modified retrospective approach. The Company plans to adopt this standard on May 1, 2019. Upon adoption of this subtopic, the Company expects the impact to be immaterial on its financial position, results of operations, cash flows, or financial statement disclosures as our only lease, which is related to office space, has a term of less than 12 months.

In July 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-11, *Earnings per Share (Topic 260), Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity (Topic 480), Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815)* (“ASU 2017-11”). ASU 2017-11 consists of two parts. The amendments in Part I of this update change the classification analysis of certain equity-linked financial instruments (or embedded features) with down round features. When determining whether certain financial instruments should be classified as liabilities or equity instruments, a down round feature no longer precludes equity classification when assessing whether the instrument is indexed to an entity’s own stock. The amendments also clarify existing disclosure requirements for equity-classified instruments. As a result, a freestanding equity-linked financial instrument (or embedded conversion option) no longer would be accounted for as a derivative liability at fair value as a result of the existence of a down round feature. For freestanding equity classified financial instruments, the amendments require entities that present earnings per share (“EPS”) in accordance with Topic 260 to recognize the effect of the down round feature when it is triggered. That effect is treated as a dividend and as a reduction of income available to common stockholders in basic EPS. Convertible instruments with embedded conversion options that have down round features are now subject to the specialized guidance for contingent beneficial conversion features (in Subtopic 470-20, *Debt—Debt with Conversion and Other Options*), including related EPS guidance (in Topic 260). The amendments in Part II of this update re-characterize the indefinite deferral of certain provisions of Topic 480 that now are presented as pending content in the Codification, to a scope exception. Those amendments do not have an accounting effect. For public business entities, the amendments in Part I of this update are effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2018. For all other entities, the amendments in Part I of this update are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2020. Early adoption is permitted for all entities, including adoption in an interim period. If an entity early adopts the amendments in an interim period, any adjustments should be reflected as of the beginning of the fiscal year that includes that interim period. The amendments in Part II of this update do not require any transition guidance because those amendments do not have an accounting effect. The Company chose to early adopt ASU 2017-11 for the fiscal year ended April 30, 2019. The early adoption allows the Company to reduce the cost and complexity of accounting for financial instruments that, due to down round provisions, would otherwise require fair value measurement each reporting period and eliminate the corresponding impact and unnecessary volatility in reported earnings created by the revaluation when the Company’s share value changes.

In June 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-07, *Improvements to Nonemployee Share-Based Payment Accounting*, (“ASU 2018-07”). ASU 2018-07 simplifies the accounting for share-based payments granted to nonemployees for goods and services. Under ASU 2018-07, most of the guidance on such payments to nonemployees would be aligned with the requirements for share-based payments granted to employees. The changes take effect for public companies for fiscal years starting after Dec. 15, 2018, including interim periods within that fiscal year. For all other entities, the amendments are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2020. Early adoption is permitted, but no earlier than an entity’s adoption date of Topic 606. The Company is currently evaluating the impact of adopting this standard on its consolidated financial statements and related disclosures but does not expect it to have a material impact.

The Company has considered all other recently issued accounting standards and does not believe the adoption of such standards will have a material impact on its financial statements.

#### 4. NOTE RECEIVABLE, RELATED PARTY, NET

On April 10, 2018, Avalanche International Corp., a related party (“Avalanche”), issued a promissory note (the “AVLP Note”) to the Company pursuant to which the Company agreed to provide Avalanche a loan of up to \$995,500 for the period ending on April 30, 2019, subject to the terms and conditions stated in the AVLP Note. The AVLP Note accrues interest at 10% per annum and includes a 10% original issue discount. At April 30, 2018, the Company has provided loans to Avalanche in the principal amount of \$800,000, of which \$400,000 was repaid, resulting in net loans to Avalanche of \$400,000 and an original issue discount of \$40,000. During the year ended April 30, 2019, the Company provided loans to Avalanche in the principal amount of \$558,000 and received payments of \$792,085. As of April 30, 2019, the balance of the loan receivable from Avalanche was \$205,915.

In accordance with ASC No. 310, Receivables (“ASC 310”), the Company accounts for its AVLP Note at amortized cost, which represents the amount at which the promissory note was acquired, adjusted for accrued interest and accretion of original issue discount. Interest is accreted using the effective interest method. The Company records interest on an accrual basis and recognizes it as earned in accordance with the contractual terms of the promissory note. The original issue discount of \$90,500 was amortized as interest income through the maturity date. During the year ended April 30, 2019, the Company recorded \$87,167 of interest income for the discount accretion and recorded contractual interest income from the stated interest rate of \$59,220. During the year ended April 30, 2018, the Company recorded \$3,333 of interest income for the discount accretion and recorded contractual interest income from the stated interest rate of \$4,008.

On April 30, 2019, the Company and Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC (“ALSF”) entered into a securities purchase agreement (the “SPA”) for the purchase of 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$15,000,000, or \$1.50 per share with 5,000,000 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance. The total purchase price of \$15,000,000 was in the form of a non-interest bearing note receivable with a 12-month term from ALSF, a related party. The note is secured by a pledge of the purchased shares. As the note receivable from ALSF is related to the issuance of common stock, it is recorded as an offset to additional paid-in capital.

#### 5. PREPAID EXPENSES AND OTHER CURRENT ASSETS

Prepaid expenses and other current assets are as follows:

	April 30, 2019	April 30, 2018
Prepaid assets	\$ 1,172,957	\$ 1,446,667
Interest receivable	63,229	4,008
Other receivables	16,210	17,010
Total prepaid expenses and other current assets	<u>\$ 1,252,396</u>	<u>\$ 1,467,685</u>

##### *Spartan Consulting Agreement*

The Company entered into a five year consulting agreement with Spartan pursuant to which Spartan has agreed to provide consulting services with respect to general corporate matters, including, but not limited to, advice and input with respect to raising capital, potential merger and acquisition transactions, identifying suitable personnel for management, developing corporate structure and finance strategies, assisting the Company with strategic introductions, assisting management with enhancing corporate and shareholder value and introducing the Company to potential investors. In December 2017, since the maximum amount was raised in the Offering, the Company paid to Spartan a consulting fee of \$1,400,000 for the services to be rendered over the sixty (60) month term of this consulting agreement. As of April 30, 2019 the unamortized balance under this agreement was \$1,026,667, which is included in prepaid expenses and other current assets.

## 6. INCOME TAXES

The Company has fully reserved the net deferred income tax assets by taking a full valuation allowance against these assets. As a result of this decision, during the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company did not recognize any income tax benefit as a result of its net loss. The table below shows the balances for the deferred income tax assets and liabilities as of the date indicated.

	<u>April 30, 2019</u>	<u>April 30, 2018</u>
Deferred income tax asset:		
Net operating loss carryover	\$ 1,541,317	\$ 517,972
Other temporary differences	120,739	7,637
Total deferred tax asset	1,662,056	525,609
Valuation allowance	(1,662,056)	(525,609)
Deferred income tax asset, net of allowance	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

The income tax provision (benefit) consists of the following:

	<u>For the Year Ended April 30, 2019</u>	<u>2018</u>
Federal and State		
Current	\$ -	\$ -
Deferred	(1,662,056)	(525,609)
Valuation allowance	1,662,056	525,609
Income tax provision (benefit)	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

On December 22, 2017, the U.S. Congress enacted the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act ("tax reform" or "Tax Act") which, among other things, lowered the U.S. statutory tax rate from 35% to 21% effective January 1, 2018. Consequently, the Company applied a blended U.S. statutory federal income tax rate of 29.7% for fiscal 2018. During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company did not recognize income tax expense. Our effective tax rate was 0% for the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018. The effective tax rate differed primarily due to the change in the valuation allowance, primarily related to the revaluation of deferred tax assets and liabilities to reflect the new federal tax rate. The reconciliation of income tax attributable to operations computed at the U.S. Federal statutory income tax rate to income tax expense is as follows:

	<u>For the Year Ended April 30, 2019</u>	<u>2018</u>
Tax benefit at U.S. Federal statutory tax rate	-21.0%	-29.7%
Increase (decrease) in tax rate resulting from:		
Allowance against deferred tax assets	20.9%	-1.0%
Nondeductible meals & entertainment expense and other	0.1%	0.1%
Taxes in respect of prior years	-	-
Changes in federal tax rate	-	30.6%
Effective tax rate	<u>0.0%</u>	<u>0.0%</u>

At April 30, 2019, the Company had total domestic Federal net operating loss carryovers of approximately \$7,185,129 available to offset future taxable income. Federal net operating loss carryovers ("NOLs") expire beginning in 2026. The Company has not filed its 2016 through 2019 Federal income tax returns. The Company will not be able to utilize these carryovers until the related tax returns are filed. In accordance with Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code, deductibility of the Company's NOLs may be subject to an annual limitation in the event of a change of control as defined under the regulations.

In assessing the realization of deferred tax assets, management considers whether it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. The ultimate realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon the generation of future taxable income during the periods in which temporary differences representing net future deductible amounts become deductible. Management considers the scheduled reversal of deferred tax assets, projected future taxable income and tax planning strategies in making this assessment. After consideration of all of the information available and due to the substantial doubt related to the Company's ability to continue as a going concern and utilize its deferred tax assets, the Company recorded a full valuation allowance of the deferred tax asset. For the year ended April 30, 2019 the valuation allowance has increased by \$1,136,447.

The 2016 through 2019 tax years remains open to examination by the Internal Revenue Service. The IRS has the authority to examine such tax year until the applicable statute of limitations expire.

## 7. STOCK-BASED COMPENSATION

On April 30, 2016, the Company's shareholders approved the Company's 2016 Stock Incentive Plan (the "Plan"). The Plan provides for the issuance of a maximum of 12,500,000 shares of the Company's Common Stock to be offered to the Company's directors, officers, employees, and consultants. On March 1, 2019 the Company's shareholders approved an additional 7,500,000 shares to be available for issuance under the plan. Options granted under the Plan have an exercise price equal to or greater than the fair value of the underlying Common Stock at the date of grant and become exercisable based on a vesting schedule determined at the date of grant. The options expire between 5 and 10 years from the date of grant. Restricted stock awards granted under the Plan are subject to a vesting period determined at the date of grant.

All options that the Company grants are granted at the per share fair value on the grant date. Vesting of options differs based on the terms of each option. The Company has valued the options at their date of grant utilizing the Black Scholes option pricing model. As of the issuance of these financial statements, there was not an active public market for the Company's shares. Accordingly, the fair value of the underlying options was determined based on the historical volatility data of similar companies, considering the industry, products and market capitalization of such other entities. The risk-free interest rate used in the calculations is based on the implied yield available on U.S. Treasury issues with an equivalent term approximating the expected life of the options as calculated using the simplified method. The expected life of the options used was based on the contractual life of the option granted. Stock-based compensation is a non-cash expense because the Company settles these obligations by issuing shares of the Company's Common Stock from its authorized shares instead of settling such obligations with cash payments.

A summary of option activity under the Company's Plan as of April 30, 2019 and 2018, and changes during the years ended are as follows:

	Shares Available for Grant	Number of Options	Outstanding Options		
			Weighted Average Exercise Price	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Life (years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value
Balance at April 30, 2017	4,875,000	7,625,000	\$ 0.0004	9.00	\$ 1,296,250
Forfeited	125,000	(125,000)	\$ 0.0004		
Balance at April 30, 2018	5,000,000	7,500,000	\$ 0.0004	8.00	\$ 7,497,000
Increase to plan shares	7,500,000				
Options granted	(8,210,000)	8,210,000	\$ 1.0000		
Balance at April 30, 2019	4,290,000	15,710,000	\$ 0.5228	7.51	\$ 15,352,000
Options vested and expected to vest at April 30, 2019		13,710,000	\$ 0.4532	8.16	\$ 14,352,000
Options exercisable at April 30, 2019		8,045,415	\$ 0.0682	7.17	\$ 11,519,708

The aggregate intrinsic value in the table above represents the total pretax intrinsic value (i.e., the difference between the fair value price on the respective date and the exercise price, times the number of shares) that would have been received by the option holders had all option holders exercised their options. There have not been any options exercised during the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018.

### ***Stock options granted to employees and consultants***

During the year ended April 30, 2018, the Company did not grant any equity-based awards from the Plan and did not recognize any stock-based compensation expense from previous grants made pursuant to the Plan. The estimated fair value of stock options granted to employees and consultants during the year ended April 30, 2019, were calculated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model using the following assumptions:

	<b>For the Year Ended April 30, 2019</b>
Expected term (in years)	3.00 - 6.25
Volatility	83.40%
Risk-free interest rate	2.50% - 2.95%
Dividend yield	--

**Expected Term:** The expected term represents the period that the options granted are expected to be outstanding and is determined using the simplified method (based on the mid-point between the vesting date and the end of the contractual term).

**Expected Volatility:** The Company uses an average historical stock price volatility of comparable public companies within the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industry that were deemed to be representative of future stock price trends as the Company does not have trading history for its common stock. The Company will continue to apply this process until a sufficient amount of historical information regarding the volatility of its own stock price becomes available.

**Risk-Free Interest Rate:** The Company based the risk-free interest rate over the expected term of the options based on the constant maturity rate of U.S. Treasury securities with similar maturities as of the date of the grant.

**Expected Dividend:** The Company has not paid and does not anticipate paying any dividends in the near future. Therefore, the expected dividend yield was zero.

### ***Performance-contingent stock options granted to employee***

In November 2018, the Board of Directors granted 2,000,000 performance-contingent options to the Chief Executive Officer. These options have an exercise price of \$1.00 per share.

These options have two separate performance triggers for vesting based upon our therapies achieving certain FDA approval milestones within a specified timeframe. By definition, the performance condition in these options can only be achieved after the performance condition of FDA approval has been achieved. As such, the requisite service period is based on the estimated period over which the market condition can be achieved. When a performance goal is deemed to be probable of achievement, time-based vesting and recognition of stock-based compensation expense commences. In the event any the milestones are not achieved by the specified timelines, such vesting award will terminate and no longer be exercisable with respect to that portion of the shares. The maximum potential expense associated with the performance-contingent awards is \$1.2 million of general and administrative expense if all of the performance conditions are achieved as stated in the option agreement. Due to the significant risks and uncertainties associated with FDA approvals, through April 30, 2019, the Company believes that the achievement of the requisite performance conditions is not probable and, as a result, no compensation cost has been recognized for these awards.

### ***Stock issued for license fees***

Pursuant to the terms of the License Agreement, during the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company issued 2,227,923 and 214,967 shares of its Common Stock and recognized \$2,227,923 and \$218,417, respectively, in license fees.

### *Stock-based compensation expense*

The Company's results of operations include expenses relating to stock-based compensation as follows:

	<b>For the Year Ended April 30,</b>	
	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>
Research and development	\$ 2,227,923	\$ 218,417
General and administrative	396,170	-
Total	<u>\$ 2,624,093</u>	<u>\$ 218,417</u>

As of April 30, 2019, total unamortized stock-based compensation expense related to unvested employee and non-employee awards that are expected to vest was \$4.1 million. The weighted-average period over which such stock-based compensation expense will be recognized is approximately 3.6 years.

## **8. WARRANTS**

On October 1, 2017, the Company issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 5,500 shares of Common Stock at an exercise price equal to \$1.20 per share of Common Stock in connection with the issuance of a promissory note in the aggregate principal amount of \$44,000 to DPW Holdings, Inc. ("DPW"), a related party (See Note 11).

On March 10, 2019, the Company issued warrants to purchase 500,000 shares of Common Stock at an exercise price equal to \$1.00 per share of Common Stock in connection with entering into a two-year advisory agreement with a consultant related to identifying sources of capital for the Company. The warrants vest over five years. The grant date fair value of the warrants was \$217,448 and will be expensed over the term of the consulting agreement. The estimated fair value of warrants granted to the consulting during the year ended April 30, 2019, was calculated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model using the following assumptions:

	<b>For the Year Ended April 30, 2019</b>
Expected term (in years)	2.50
Volatility	69.35%
Risk-free interest rate	2.53%
Dividend yield	--

*Expected Term:* The expected term represents the period that the warrants granted are expected to be outstanding.

*Expected Volatility:* The Company uses an average historical stock price volatility of comparable public companies within the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industry that were deemed to be representative of future stock price trends as the Company does not have trading history for its common stock. The Company will continue to apply this process until a sufficient amount of historical information regarding the volatility of its own stock price becomes available.

*Risk-Free Interest Rate:* The Company based the risk-free interest rate over the expected term of the warrants based on the constant maturity rate of U.S. Treasury securities with similar maturities as of the date of the grant.

*Expected Dividend:* The Company has not paid and does not anticipate paying any dividends in the near future. Therefore, the expected dividend yield was zero.

On March 20, 2019, the Company issued 78,672 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance in connection with a securities purchase agreements for the purchase of 157,346 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$236,023, or \$1.50 per share.

On April 30, 2019, the Company issued 5,000,000 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance to ALSF, a related party, in connection with a securities purchase agreement ("SPA") for the purchase of 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$15,000,000, or \$1.50 per share. The terms of the warrant agreement include full ratchet anti-dilution protection.



The following table summarizes information about Common Stock warrants outstanding at April 30, 2019:

Outstanding				Exercisable	
Exercise Price	Number Outstanding	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Life (years)	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Number Exercisable	Weighted Average Exercise Price
\$1.20	5,500	1.42	\$1.20	5,500	\$1.20
\$1.00	500,000	4.86	\$1.00	--	--
\$3.00	5,078,672	5.00	\$3.00	78,672	\$3.00
<b>\$1.20 - \$3.00</b>	<b>5,584,172</b>	<b>4.98</b>	<b>\$1.27</b>	<b>84,172</b>	<b>\$2.88</b>

## 9. OTHER RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

On May 1, 2016, the Company entered into a Management Services Agreement (“Management Agreement”) with Avalanche International Corp. (“Avalanche”), a related party. The Company’s officers and directors are also officers and directors of Avalanche. Further, MCKEA is the majority member of Philou Ventures, LLC, which is the controlling shareholder of Avalanche. Pursuant to the terms of the Management Services Agreement, Avalanche shall provide management, consulting and financial services to Alzamend. Such services shall include advice and assistance concerning any and all aspects of operations, planning and financing of Alzamend and conducting relations with accountants, attorney, financial advisors and other professionals. The term of the Management Services Agreement, as amended, is for the period May 1, 2016 to December 31, 2017 and may be extended by written agreement. The Company initially paid \$40,000 per month for these services and, beginning February 2017, is currently paying \$20,000 per month. During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company recognized \$160,000 and \$240,000, respectively, in management fees. At April 30, 2019 and April 30, 2018, \$75,000 and \$3,000, respectively, was included within related party payable on the Company’s balance sheet. The MSA expired as of December 31, 2018.

On June 28, 2017, MCKEA and Spartan Capital Securities, LLC (“Spartan”) entered into a five-year consulting agreement (the “MCKEA Consulting Agreement”). Pursuant to the MCKEA Consulting Agreement, upon the receipt by the Company of no less than \$2,500,000 in gross proceeds from the Confidential Private Placement Memorandum dated August 17, 2017 (the “PPM”), MCKEA will transfer to Spartan 5,000,000 shares of Alzamend Common Stock. During the term of the MCKEA Consulting Agreement, Spartan will provide consulting services related to general corporate and other matters related to MCKEA’s investment in the Company such as advice on mergers and acquisition transactions, finance strategies, identification of potential management candidates and other strategic introductions.

The amount due at April 30, 2019 and 2018, to MCKEA and the Company’s officers for reimbursement of expenses paid and incurred by these related parties was \$6,736 and \$6,636, respectively. The amounts are included within related party payable on the Company’s balance sheet.

## 10. NOTES PAYABLE

During January 2017, the Company entered into a promissory note to a third party and received net proceeds of \$65,000. As consideration for this loan, the Company issued a promissory note in the aggregate principal amount of \$75,000, which included an OID and fees of \$10,000. The OID was amortized as non-cash interest expense over the term of the debt. During the year ended April 30, 2018, interest expense of \$3,618 was recorded from the debt discount amortization. The promissory note accrued interest at 15% per year and during the year ended April 30, 2018, the Company recorded \$16,838 in interest. This loan was repaid during the year ended April 30, 2018. At April 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company had no outstanding third-party borrowings.

## 11. NOTES PAYABLE, RELATED PARTY

At April 30, 2017, the outstanding balance on short term borrowings from Avalanche, a related party, was \$180,100. During the year ended April 30, 2018, Avalanche provided an additional \$123,500 in short term financing. This short-term obligation was non-interest bearing, due upon demand and repaid during the year ended April 30, 2018.

During January 2017, the Company entered a promissory note and received net proceeds of \$70,000 from a related party. As consideration for this loan, the Company issued a promissory note in the aggregate principal amount of \$80,000, which included an OID of \$10,000. The OID was amortized as non-cash interest expense over the term of the debt. During the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, interest expense of nil and \$6,271, respectively, was recorded from the debt discount amortization. This promissory note accrued interest at 15% per year and during the years ended April 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company recorded nil and \$6,272, respectively, in interest. The Company repaid this loan during the year ended April 30, 2018.

On October 1, 2017, the Company issued a promissory note in the principal amount of \$47,520 to DPW. The promissory note included an OID of \$3,520 resulting in net proceeds to the Company of \$44,000, yielded 8% simple interest on the principal amount, and was due on August 16, 2018. As additional consideration, the Company also issued to DPW a warrant to purchase 5,500 shares of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$1.20 per share. The Company recorded debt discount of \$2,235 based on the estimated fair value of the 5,500 warrants. During the year ended April 30, 2018, the Company repaid the outstanding balance to DPW.

## 12. EQUITY TRANSACTIONS

The Company is authorized to issue 10,000,000 shares of Preferred Stock \$0.0001 par value. The Board of Directors has designated 1,360,000 shares as Series A Convertible Preferred Stock (the "Series A Preferred Shares"). The rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions on the remaining authorized 8,640,000 shares of Preferred Stock have not been determined. The Company's Board of Directors is authorized to create a new series of preferred shares and determine the number of shares, as well as the rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions granted to or imposed upon any series of preferred shares. As of April 30, 2019, there were 750,000 shares of Series A Preferred Shares and no other shares of Preferred Stock issued or outstanding.

### *Series A Preferred Stock*

The Series A Preferred Shares convey no dividend rights except as may be declared by the Board in its sole and absolute discretion, out of funds legally available for that purpose. Holders of Series A Preferred Shares are entitled to 50 non-cumulative votes per share on all matters presented to our stockholders for action. In addition, the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the Series A Preferred then outstanding, voting as a separate class, is required for the Company to do any of the following:

- amend, alter or repeal any of the preferences or rights of the Series A Preferred Shares;
- authorize any reclassification of the Series A Preferred Shares;
- increase the authorized number of Series A Preferred Shares; or
- create any class or series of shares ranking prior to the Series A Preferred Shares as to dividends or liquidation.

The Series A Preferred Shares are not entitled to preemptive rights. In the event of any dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary, the Holders of Series A Preferred Shares shall be entitled to participate in any distribution out of the assets of the Company on an equal basis per share with the holders of the Common Stock.

Holders of Series A Preferred Shares have the right to convert their shares into shares of Common Stock at any time at a conversion rate equal to twenty (20) shares of Common Stock for every one (1) Series A Preferred Share. The conversion rate is not subject to anti-dilution adjustments.

### *Common Stock*

On May 27, 2016, the Company's Board of Directors approved a Certificate of Amendment to the Company's Certificate of Incorporation increasing its authorized shares of Common Stock from 150,000,000 to 300,000,000.

An exclusive license agreement with sublicensing terms was made effective on May 1, 2016, as amended on August 17, 2017, (the “Effective Date”) by and between the University of South Florida (the “University”), and a direct support organization of the University and the Company (the “License Agreement”). There are certain license fees and milestone payments required to be paid for the licensing of an immunotherapy vaccine peptide that is designed to be used both as a treatment and vaccine against Alzheimer’s (the “Technology”), pursuant to the terms of the License Agreement with the University of South Florida Research Foundation, Inc. (the “Licensor”) and the University. Pursuant to the terms of the License Agreement, the Licensor is entitled to receive that number of shares of the Company’s Common Stock equal to five percent (5%) of the total number of issued and outstanding shares outstanding, subject to additional issuances until such time as the Company has received a total of \$5 million in cash in exchange for the Company’s equity securities. During the year ended April 30, 2018, the Company issued 214,967 shares of its Common Stock and recognized \$218,417 in license fees pursuant to the License Agreement. During the year ended April 30, 2019, the Company issued 2,227,923 shares of its Common Stock and recognized \$2,227,923 in license fees pursuant to the License Agreement. The amount of the license fees was based on the fair value of the Company’s Common Stock on the date of issuance. Fair value was determined from recent sales of the Company’s Common Stock to third parties.

There are certain initial license fees and milestone payments required to be paid by us to the Licensor pursuant to the terms of the License Agreement. The License Agreement requires the Company to pay royalty payments of four percent (4%) on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology. The Company has already paid an initial license fee of \$200,000. As an additional licensing fee, the Licensor also received shares of the Company’s Common Stock equal to five percent (5%) of the total number of issued and outstanding shares outstanding as the Company has received a total of \$5 million in cash in exchange for the Company’s equity securities.

Between October 19, 2017 and December 29, 2017, the Company entered into subscription agreements for the purchase of 419.45 units at \$10,000 for each unit purchased. Each unit consisted of 10,000 shares of Common Stock. In aggregate, the 419.45 units represented 4,194,500 shares of Common Stock for an aggregate purchase price of \$4,194,500, or \$1.00 per share, pursuant to the terms of a Private Placement Memorandum dated August 17, 2017 (the “PPM”). In conjunction with the 2017 PPM, the Company incurred \$419,450 in placement fees and \$93,523 in legal and filing fees, resulting in net proceeds to the Company of \$3,681,528 (the “2017 Offering”).

During the year ended April 30, 2018, the Company received notices of conversion from three investors that had purchased 610,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock. The Series A Preferred Stock was converted into 12,200,000 shares of Common Stock.

On March 20, 2019, the Company entered into securities purchase agreements for the purchase of 157,346 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$236,023, or \$1.50 per share with 78,672 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance. The purchase price of \$236,023 was paid in cash.

On April 30, 2019, the Company and ALSF entered into a SPA for the purchase of 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock for a total purchase price of \$15,000,000, or \$1.50 per share with 5,000,000 warrants with a 5-year life and an exercise price of \$3.00 per share and vesting upon issuance. The total purchase price of \$15,000,000 was in the form of a non-interest bearing note receivable with a 12-month term from ALSF, a related party. The note is secured by a pledge of the purchased shares. Pursuant to the SPA, ALSF is entitled to full ratchet anti-dilution protection, most-favored nation status, denying the Company the right to enter into a variable rate transaction absent its consent, a right to participate in any future financing the Company may consummate and to have all the shares of Common Stock to which it is entitled under the SPA registered under the Securities Act within 180 days of the final closing of an initial public offering.

#### *Placement Agreement*

In connection with the 2017 Offering, the Company agreed with Spartan Capital Securities, LLC (“Spartan”), the placement agent in the 2017 Offering, as follows:

#### Use of Proceeds

The Company will apply the net proceeds from the Offering to include the retention of an FDA consulting firm, payment of the IND and all associated costs and the launch of a First Stage Clinical Trial with up to 20 human patients along with limited operational expenses.

## Corporate Governance

During the period commencing on December 29, 2017, and ending at such time as the Company's Common Stock is listed on a national securities exchange, Spartan will have the right to designate one member of the Company's Board of Directors (the "**Board**"). If Spartan does not elect to designate a member of the Board, then the Company will permit a representative of Spartan to attend all meetings of the Board as an observer.

In addition, commencing within twelve (12) to twenty-four (24) months from December 29, 2017, the Board will be comprised of two inside directors and three independent directors (as such term is defined by Rule 5605 of the NASDAQ Stock Market). This covenant will expire upon the listing of the Company's Common Stock on a national securities exchange.

## Registration Rights

Subject to applicable law or regulations including but not limited to Rule 415 of the Securities Act the Company, within one hundred and eighty (180) days of the final closing of an initial public offering of the Company's equity securities, file a registration statement on Form S-1 with the Securities and Exchange Commission, which registration statement will cover the shares of Common Stock issuable to the Placement Agent pursuant to the MCKEA Consulting Agreement discussed above as well as the shares of Common Stock issued in the Offering.

## **13. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

On May 1, 2016, the Company entered into the License Agreement with the Licensor pursuant to which the Licensor granted the Company a royalty bearing, exclusive worldwide license, limited to the field of Alzheimer's Immunotherapy and Diagnostics, under United States Patent No. 8,188,046, entitled "Amyloid Beta Peptides and Methods of Use" (AL002), filed April 7, 2009, and granted May 29, 2012.

In addition to royalty payments of 4% on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology, the Company was required to pay a license fee of \$100,000 on June 25, 2016, and December 31, 2016. As an additional licensing fee, the Licensor is entitled to receive that number of shares of our Common Stock equal to five percent (5%) of the sum of the total number of issued and outstanding shares plus any securities that are convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock, subject to adjustment for additional issuances until such time as the Company has received a total of \$5 million in cash in exchange for our equity securities. As of April 30, 2019 we had issued 3,601,809 shares to the Licensor in full satisfaction of this additional licensing fee. Additionally, the Company is required to pay milestone payments on the due dates to Licensor for the license of the technology, as follows:

<b>Payment</b>	<b>Due Date</b>	<b>Event</b>
\$ 50,000	Upon IND application filing	Upon IND application filing
\$ 50,000	12 months from IND application filing date	Upon first dosing of patient in first Phase I Clinical Trial
\$ 175,000	12 months from first patient dosed in Phase I	Upon Completion of first Phase I Clinical Trial
\$ 500,000	24 months from completion of first Phase I Trial	Upon Completion of first Phase II Clinical Trial
\$ 1,000,000	12 months from completion of the first Phase II Clinical Trial	Upon first patient treated in a Phase III Clinical Trial
\$ 10,000,000	7 years from the effective date of the agreement	Upon FDA BLA Approval

None of these milestones was met as of April 30, 2019. If the Company fails to meet a milestone by its specified date, the Licensor may terminate the License Agreement.

The Licensor was also granted a preemptive right to acquire such shares or other equity securities that may be issued from time to time by the Company while Licensor remains the owner of any equity securities of the Company. Further, if the Company issues equity securities at a price per share that is less than the price paid by purchasers in a transaction for aggregate consideration of at least \$5,000,000 (the "Investment Price"), then the number of shares owned by Licensor shall be increased upon such issuance. The amount of the increase shall be determined by multiplying the number of shares then owned by Licensor by a fraction; the numerator of which shall be equal to the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock, and the denominator of which shall be equal to the sum of (i) the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately prior to the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock plus (ii) the number of shares of Common Stock which the aggregate consideration for the total number of additional shares of Common Stock so issued would purchase at the Investment Price.

On July 2, 2018, the Company obtained two royalty-bearing, exclusive worldwide licenses from the Licensor to a therapy known as AL001 to mitigate extreme agitation and forestall other deterioration as displayed by patients with up to moderate AD. AL001 is an ionic cocrystal of lithium for the treatment of Alzheimer's and possibly other neurodegenerative diseases. There are certain license fees and milestone payments required to be paid for the licensing of the AL001 technology, pursuant to the terms of the two Standard Exclusive License Agreements with Sublicensing Terms, both dated June 21, 2018, (the "AL001 License Agreements") with the Licensor and the University. In addition, a royalty payment of 3% is required pursuant to License #18110 while License #18111 requires a royalty payment of 1.5% on net sales of products developed from the licensed technology. For the two AL001 licenses, in the aggregate, the Company was required to pay initial license fees of \$50,000 no later than July 31, 2018, and \$150,000 no later than March 31, 2019. As an additional licensing fee, the Licensor is entitled to receive that number of shares of Common Stock equal to three percent (3%) of the sum of the total number of issued and outstanding shares. Additionally, the Company is required to pay milestone payments on the due dates to Licensor for the license of the technology, as follows:

<b>Payment</b>	<b>Due Date</b>	<b>Event</b>
\$ 50,000	November 1, 2019	Pre-IND meeting
\$ 65,000	6 months from IND filing date	IND application filing
\$ 190,000	12 months from IND filing date	Upon first dosing of patient in a clinical trial
\$ 500,000	12 months from first patient dosing	Upon Completion of first clinical trial
\$ 1,250,000	12 months from completion of the first Phase II clinical trial	Upon first patient treated in a Phase III Clinical Trial
\$ 10,000,000	8 years from the Effective Date of the Agreement	Upon FDA Approval

None of these milestones was met as of April 30, 2019. If the Company fails to meet a milestone by its specified date, the Licensor may terminate the License Agreement.

#### **14. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

In accordance with FASB ASC 855-10, the Company has analyzed its operations subsequent to April 30, 2019 and has determined that it does not have any material subsequent events to disclose in these financial statements except for the following.

Between June 25, 2019 and August 15, 2019, the Company entered into subscription agreements for the purchase of 646,433 units at \$1.50 for each unit purchased pursuant to its 2019 private offering (the "2019 Offering"). Each unit consists of one (1) share of Common Stock and one (1) warrant to purchase one half (0.5) share of Common Stock. In aggregate, the 646,433 units represents 646,433 shares of Common Stock and 323,216 warrants with an exercise price of \$3.00 per share for an aggregate purchase price of \$969,650, or \$1.50 per share. The 2019 Offering is being conducted pursuant to the terms of a Confidential Private Placement Memorandum dated June 12, 2019 (the "2019 PPM"). As of August 15, 2019, in conjunction with the 2019 PPM, the Company incurred \$145,448 in placement fees, resulting in net proceeds to the Company of \$824,202.

#### **2019 Placement Agreement**

Pursuant to the 2019 Placement Agreement effective as of June 10, 2019 entered into in connection with the 2019 PPM, the Company has agreed with the Placement Agent to certain cash compensation payable to the Placement Agent and, without limitation, to the following:

##### Placement Agent Compensation:

Upon the initial closing of the 2019 Offering the Company must pay to the Placement Agent a non-refundable fee of Twenty-Five Thousand Dollars (\$25,000) and issue to the Placement Agent 500,000 shares of Common Stock.

Further, the Company has agreed to issue to the Placement Agent warrants to purchase a number of shares of Common Stock (the "Placement Agent Warrants") equal to ten percent (10%) of the number of shares of Common Stock sold in the 2019 Offering. The Placement Agent Warrants shall be exercisable for a period of five (5) years after their date of issuance, shall have an exercise price of \$1.75 per share and shall contain provisions pertaining to cashless exercise, standard anti-dilution protection and piggyback registration rights.

Use of Proceeds:

The Company will apply the net proceeds from the Offering primarily: (i) for licensing and other fees to the University and the Byrd Institute; (ii) to pay certain fees to the FDA; (iii) to pay for third-party research; (iv) to pay certain marketing-related fees, and (v) for working capital.

Incurrence of Debt:

During the two (2) years following the final Closing, the Company will not, without the prior written consent of the Placement Agent, incur indebtedness for borrowed money in an aggregate amount in excess of \$250,000.

Additional Shares Issuable to the Placement Agent, its Affiliates and the Investors in this Offering

The Company has agreed to take certain actions within prescribed time periods. If the Company fails to do so on a timely basis, the Company has agreed to issue to the Placement Agent, its Affiliates and the investors in the 2019 Offering a significant number of additional shares of Common Stock.

Future Sales of Securities and Conversion of the Series A Preferred Stock

During the period commencing on the final Closing and ending two years thereafter, provided that no Qualified Financing (as defined below) has occurred, if (i) the Company issues any shares of Common Stock or Common Stock equivalents at a per share price below \$1.50 absent the Placement Agent's consent, or (ii) any holder of the Company's Series A Preferred Stock elects to convert such shares into Common Stock, then upon any such issuance or conversion, as the case may be, the Placement Agent, its Affiliates and the Investors in this Offering will be entitled to receive a significant number of additional shares of Common Stock (this provision can thus be deemed the functional equivalent of weighted average anti-dilution protection). For purposes of the 2019 Placement Agreement, a "Qualified Financing" means the sale of equity securities by us in a single transaction or a series of related transactions registered under the Securities Act resulting in gross proceeds to us of not less than \$25,000,000.

In addition, during the period commencing on the final Closing and ending two years thereafter, the Company has agreed not to enter into any transactions with Milton C. Ault, our chairman of the board and principal stockholder or any Affiliate (as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act) thereof absent the Placement Agent's consent. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Placement Agent has consented to our potential entry into an agreement whereby the Company would issue to an Affiliate of Mr. Ault 10,000,000 shares of Common Stock on terms substantially identical to those of the 2019 Offering.

Failure to File Reports under the Securities Act

In the event that the Company does not file its annual or semiannual reports with the Commission on a timely basis, then the Placement Agent will have the right to designate a replacement for one of our members of our Board for a period of one (1) year following any such failure to file a periodic report on a timely basis, provided that neither Mr. Ault nor William B. Horne shall be subject to this provision.

Employment Agreement with the Chief Executive Officer:

Upon or before the initial Closing of the 2019 Offering, the Company shall have entered into an employment agreement with Stephan Jackman having a term of at least two (2) years.

Corporate Governance:

During the period commencing on the final closing of the 2019 Offering and ending at such time as the Common Stock is listed on a national securities exchange, the Placement Agent will have the right to designate one member of our Board.

Uplisting Agreement:

Pursuant to the Uplisting Agreement effective as of June 10, 2019, the Company has agreed with the Placement Agent as follows:

The Company will engage the Placement Agent as an advisor (in such capacity, the "Advisor") to, at our request, provide advisory services (the "Services") to us in connection with a potential public offering (an "IPO"). The Company expects that any such Services rendered would consist principally of advising us on how to properly develop and implement strategies that would enhance our ability to successfully complete an IPO and in connection therewith obtain a listing on a national securities exchange, provided that the Company meets any such exchange's listing criteria at the applicable time as well as introduce us to appropriate underwriters that would lead or conduct any such IPO.

According to the Uplisting Agreement, the Company will, whether the Company requests its assistance or not, be obligated to issue to the Advisor Five Hundred Thousand (500,000) shares of Common Stock as well as make a cash payment to the Advisor in the amount of \$475,000 once the Company has raised no less than \$1,000,000 in gross proceeds in the 2019 Offering and, in the event that the Company successfully consummates an IPO with an underwriter introduced to us by the Advisor, pay the Advisor a fee equal to two percent (2%) of the gross proceeds raised in the IPO.

If prior to a Qualified Financing the Company issues any shares of Common Stock or Common Stock equivalents at a per share price below \$1.50 absent the Advisor's consent, then upon any such issuance, the Advisor will be entitled to receive a significant number of additional shares of Common Stock (this provision can, like its counterpart in the 2019 Placement Agreement described above, thus be deemed the functional equivalent of weighted average anti-dilution protection).

In the event that the Company engages in what the Uplisting Agreement refers to as an "Alternative Transaction" during the term of such agreement or for a period of two (2) years thereafter, the Company will be obligated to pay to the Advisor a fee in cash equal to three percent (3%) of the amount of the consideration paid or received by us and/or our stockholders in the Alternative Transaction. For purposes of the Uplisting Agreement, an "Alternative Transaction" means a business combination, including, any merger, acquisition or sale of stock or assets (whether the Company is the acquiring or the acquired entity), joint venture, strategic alliance or other similar transaction, and shall extend to any subsidiary of ours on the same terms as will be applicable to us.

The term of the Uplisting Agreement will be two (2) years, subject to either party's right to terminate it in the event that the other party to the agreement breaches it in any material way.

## PART III—EXHIBITS

### Index to Exhibits

Exhibit No.	Exhibit Description
2.1	Certificate of Incorporation (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.1 of Form DOS filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on August 19, 2016).
2.2	Bylaws (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.2 of Form DOS filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on August 19, 2016).
2.3	Certificate of Designation of Alzamend Neuro, Inc. Series A Convertible Preferred Stock, dated May 30, 2016**
3.1	Promissory Note Due April 30, 2020, issued by Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC, dated April 30, 2019**
3.2	Amendment to Note Due April 30, 2020, by and between Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC, and Alzamend Neuro, Inc., dated June 11, 2019**
3.3	Warrant to Purchase Common Stock issued to Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC, dated April 30, 2019*
4.1	Form of Subscription Agreement.*
4.2	Securities Purchase Agreement with Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC, dated April 30, 2019**
6.1	Standard Exclusive License Agreement with Sublicensing Terms with the University of South Florida Research Foundation, Inc., dated May 1, 2016 (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 6.1 of Form DOS/A filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on September 29, 2016).
6.2	Management Services Agreement, as amended, with Avalanche International Corp., dated May 1, 2016 (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 6.2 of Form DOS/A filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on September 29, 2016).
6.3	Standard Exclusive License Agreement with Sublicensing Terms Number LIC18110 with the University of South Florida Research Foundation, Inc., dated July 2, 2018 (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 6.3 of Form 1-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 21, 2019)
6.4	Standard Exclusive License Agreement with Sublicensing Terms Number LIC18111 with the University of South Florida Research Foundation, Inc., dated July 2, 2018 (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 6.4 of Form 1-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 21, 2019).
6.5	Employment Agreement with Henry Nisser effective May 1, 2019 (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 6.5 of Form 1-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on August 28, 2019).
6.6	Employment Offer Letter with Stephan Jackman, dated November 30, 2018*
6.7	Employment Offer Letter with Kenneth S. Cragun, dated November 30, 2018**
6.8	Placement Agent Agreement with Spartan Capital Securities, LLC, dated June 10, 2019**
6.9	Stock Pledge Agreement with Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC, dated June 11 2019*
6.10	Consulting Agreement with Spartan Capital Securities, LLC, dated June 28, 2017*
8.1	Escrow Agreement with SOS Back Office Solutions, LLC, dated January 30, 2020**
11.1	Consent of Squar Milner LLP, Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm*
11.2	Consent of Sichenzia Ross Ference LLP (included in Exhibit 12.1)**
12.1	Opinion of Sichenzia Ross Ference LLP**

\* Filed herewith

\*\* Previously filed



## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Regulation A, the issuer certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form 1-A and has duly caused this offering statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized on March 12, 2020.

(Exact name of issuer as specified in its charter):

**Alzamend Neuro, Inc.**

By (Signature and Title):

/s/ Stephan Jackman  
Chief Executive Officer  
(Principal Executive Officer).

This offering statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

(Signature): /s/ Kenneth S. Cragun

(Title): Chief Financial Officer  
(Principal Financial Officer,  
Principal Accounting Officer).

(Date): March 12, 2020

### SIGNATURES OF DIRECTORS:

/s/ Milton C. Ault, III  
Milton C. Ault, III, Executive Chairman

March 12, 2020  
Date

/s/ Philip E. Mansour  
Director

March 12, 2020  
Date

/s/ William B. Horne  
Director

March 12, 2020  
Date

---

THIS WARRANT AND THE SECURITIES ISSUABLE UPON EXERCISE OF THIS WARRANT HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE “**SECURITIES ACT**”), OR QUALIFIED UNDER ANY STATE OR FOREIGN SECURITIES LAWS AND MAY NOT BE OFFERED FOR SALE, SOLD, PLEDGED, HYPOTHECATED OR OTHERWISE TRANSFERRED OR ASSIGNED UNLESS (I) A REGISTRATION STATEMENT COVERING SUCH SHARES IS EFFECTIVE UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND IS QUALIFIED UNDER APPLICABLE STATE AND FOREIGN LAW OR (II) THE TRANSACTION IS EXEMPT FROM THE REGISTRATION AND PROSPECTUS DELIVERY REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND THE QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS UNDER APPLICABLE STATE AND FOREIGN LAW AND, IF THE CORPORATION REQUESTS, AN OPINION SATISFACTORY TO THE CORPORATION TO SUCH EFFECT HAS BEEN RENDERED BY COUNSEL.

**WARRANT TO PURCHASE COMMON STOCK**

Original Issue Date: April 30, 2019

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, ALZAMEND NEURO, INC., a Delaware corporation (including any successor, the “**Company**”), hereby certifies that Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC, or its permitted registered assigns (the “**Holder**”), is entitled to purchase from the Company, from and after the date hereof, up to a total of 5,000,000 shares of common stock, \$.0001 par value per share (the “**Common Stock**”), of the Company (each such share, a “**Warrant Share**” and all such shares, the “**Warrant Shares**”) at an exercise price per share equal to \$3.00 per share (the “**Exercise Price**”), all subject to the terms, conditions and adjustments set forth below in this Warrant. Certain capitalized terms used in this Warrant are defined in Section 1 hereof. This Warrant is being issued pursuant to that certain Securities Purchase Agreement, dated April 30, 2019, between the Company and Holder (the “**Agreement**”) and is subject to the terms of the Agreement. Capitalized terms used herein and not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Agreement.

**1. Definitions.** As used in this Warrant, the following terms have the respective meanings set forth below:

“**Board**” means the board of directors of the Company.

“**Business Day**” means any day, except a Saturday, Sunday or legal holiday on which banking institutions in the city of New York, New York, are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to close.

“**Common Stock**” means the common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, of the Company, and any capital stock into which such Common Stock shall have been converted, exchanged or reclassified following the Original Issue Date.

“**Common Stock Equivalents**” means any securities of the Company which would entitle the holder thereof to acquire at any time Common Stock, including, without limitation, any debt, preferred stock, right, option, warrant or other instrument that is at any time convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for, or otherwise entitles the holder thereof to receive, Common Stock.

“**Company**” has the meaning set forth in the preamble of this Warrant.

“**Exercise Date**” means, for any given exercise of this Warrant, the date on which the conditions to such exercise as set forth in Section 3 hereof shall have been satisfied at or prior to 5:00 p.m., New York time, on a Business Day, including, without limitation, the receipt by the Company of the Exercise Agreement, this Warrant and the Exercise Price.

“**Exercise Agreement**” means an Exercise Agreement in the form attached to this Warrant as Exhibit A.

“**Exercise Period**” has the meaning set forth in Section 2 hereof.

---

“**Exercise Price**” has the meaning set forth in the preamble of this Warrant.

“**Fair Market Value**” means, as of any particular date, the “Fair Market Value” of the Common Stock shall be: (a) if at any time the Common Stock is not listed on any domestic securities exchange or quoted on the OTCQB or similar quotation system or association, the fair market value per share as determined by mutual consent of the parties, or absent that, by an independent third-party appraisal, (b) if the Common Stock is listed on any domestic securities exchange or quoted on the OTCQB or similar quotation system: (1) the volume weighted average of the closing sales prices of the Common Stock for such day on all domestic securities exchanges on which the Common Stock may at the time be listed; (2) if there have been no sales of the Common Stock on any such exchange on any such day, the average of the highest bid and lowest asked prices for the Common Stock on all such exchanges at the end of such day; (3) if on any such day the Common Stock is not listed on a domestic securities exchange, the closing sales price of the Common Stock as quoted on the OTCQB or similar quotation system or association for such day; or (4) if there have been no sales of the Common Stock on the OTCQB or similar quotation system or association on such day, the average of the highest bid and lowest asked prices for the Common Stock quoted on the OTCQB or similar quotation system or association at the end of such day; in each case, averaged over twenty (20) consecutive Business Days ending on the Business Day immediately prior to the day as of which “Fair Market Value” is being determined; provided, that if the Common Stock is listed on any domestic securities exchange, the term “Business Day” as used in this sentence means Business Days on which such exchange is open for trading.

“**Holder**” has the meaning set forth in the preamble of this Warrant.

“**Original Issue Date**” has the meaning set forth on the cover page to this Warrant.

“**Person**” means any individual, sole proprietorship, partnership, limited liability company, corporation, joint venture, trust, incorporated organization or government or department or agency thereof.

“**Sale Event**” means (i) any sale of Common Stock (excluding issuances of Common Stock by the Company) in a single transaction or a series of related transactions in which the holders of Common Stock immediately prior to such sale of Common Stock do not, directly or indirectly, own at least a majority of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after such sale of Common Stock, (ii) any merger, consolidation, reorganization or other business combination of the Company with or into any other corporation or other entity in which the holders of Common Stock immediately prior to such merger, consolidation, reorganization or business combination do not, directly or indirectly, own capital stock of the entity surviving such merger, consolidation, reorganization or business combination representing at least a majority of the combined voting power of the outstanding securities of such entity immediately after such merger, consolidation, reorganization or business combination, or (iii) a sale, lease or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company to an unrelated person or entity by means of a single transaction or a series of related transactions.

“**Securities Act**” has the meaning set forth in the legend endorsed on the cover page of this Warrant.

“**Warrant**” means this Warrant and all warrants issued upon division or combination of, or in substitution for, this Warrant.

“**Warrant Shares**” means the shares of Common Stock which may be purchased pursuant to this Warrant.

**2. Term of Warrant.** Subject to the terms and conditions of this Warrant, at any time or from time to time after the date hereof and prior to 5:00 p.m., New York time, on the fifth (5) year anniversary of the date hereof, if such day is not a Business Day, on the next preceding Business Day (the “**Exercise Period**”), the Holder of this Warrant may exercise this Warrant for all or any part of the Warrant Shares purchasable hereunder.

**3. Exercise of Warrant.**

(a) Exercise Procedure. This Warrant may be exercised from time to time on any Business Day during the Exercise Period, for all or any part of the unexercised Warrant Shares, upon:

(i) surrender of this Warrant to the Company at its then principal executive offices (or an indemnification in accordance with Section 9 hereof in the case of the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of this Warrant), together with a duly completed (including specifying the number of Warrant Shares for which this Warrant is being exercised) and executed Exercise Agreement; and

(ii) payment to the Company of the Exercise Price in accordance with Section 3(b) hereof.

(b) Payment of the Aggregate Exercise Price. Payment of the Aggregate Exercise Price shall be made by delivery to the Company of a certified or official bank check payable to the order of the Company or by wire transfer of immediately available funds to an account designated in writing by the Company, in the amount of such Aggregate Exercise Price.

(c) Delivery of Stock Certificates. Upon receipt by the Company of the Exercise Agreement, surrender of this Warrant and payment of the Aggregate Exercise Price (in accordance with Section 3(a) hereof), the Company shall, as promptly as reasonably practicable, and in any event within ten (10) Business Days thereafter, execute (or cause to be executed) and deliver (or cause to be delivered) to the Holder a certificate or certificates representing the Warrant Shares issuable upon such exercise, together with cash in lieu of any fraction of a share, as provided in Section 3(d) hereof. The stock certificate or certificates so delivered shall be, to the extent possible, in such denomination or denominations as the exercising Holder shall reasonably request in the Exercise Agreement and shall be registered in the name of the Holder or, subject to compliance with Section 7 hereof, such other Person's name as shall be designated in the Exercise Agreement. This Warrant shall be deemed to have been exercised and such certificate or certificates of Warrant Shares shall be deemed to have been issued, and the Holder or (subject to compliance with Section 7 hereof) any other Person so designated to be named therein shall be deemed to have become a holder of record of such Warrant Shares for all purposes, as of the Exercise Date.

(d) Fractional Shares. The Company shall not be required to issue a fractional Warrant Share upon exercise of this Warrant. As to any fraction of a Warrant Share that the Holder would otherwise be entitled to purchase upon such exercise, the Company shall pay to such Holder an amount in cash (by delivery of a certified or official bank check or by wire transfer of immediately available funds) equal to the product of (i) such fraction multiplied by (ii) the Fair Market Value of one Warrant Share on the Exercise Date.

(e) Delivery of New Warrant. Unless the purchase rights represented by this Warrant shall have expired or shall have been fully exercised, the Company shall, at the time of delivery of the certificate or certificates representing the Warrant Shares being issued in accordance with Section 3(c) hereof, deliver to the Holder a new Warrant evidencing the rights of the Holder to purchase the unexpired and unexercised Warrant Shares called for by this Warrant. Such new Warrant shall in all other respects be identical to this Warrant.

(f) Valid Issuance of Warrant and Warrant Shares; Payment of Taxes. With respect to the exercise of this Warrant, the Company hereby represents, covenants and agrees that:

(i) This Warrant is, and any Warrant issued in substitution for or replacement of this Warrant shall be, upon issuance, duly authorized and validly issued.

(ii) All Warrant Shares issuable upon the exercise of this Warrant in compliance with the terms of this Warrant shall be, upon issuance, and the Company shall take all such actions as may be necessary or appropriate in order that such Warrant Shares are, validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable, issued without violation of any pre-emptive or similar rights of any stockholder of the Company and free and clear of all taxes, liens and charges.

(iii) The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to cause the Warrant Shares, immediately upon such exercise, to be listed on any domestic securities exchange upon which shares of Common Stock or other securities constituting Warrant Shares are listed at the time of such exercise.

(iv) The Company shall pay all expenses in connection with, and all taxes and other governmental charges that may be imposed with respect to, the issuance or delivery of Warrant Shares upon exercise of this Warrant; provided that the Company shall not be required to pay any tax or governmental charge that may be imposed with respect to any applicable withholding or the issuance or delivery of the Warrant Shares to the Holder or to any other Person permitted to receive Warrant Shares upon exercise of this Warrant, and no such issuance or delivery shall be made unless and until the Holder or such Person has paid to the Company the amount of any such tax, or has established to the satisfaction of the Company that such tax has been paid.

(g) Conditional Exercise. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Warrant, if an exercise of any portion of this Warrant is to be made in connection with a public offering or a Sale Event, such exercise may at the election of the Holder be conditioned upon the consummation of such transaction, in which case such exercise shall not be deemed to be effective until immediately prior to the consummation of such transaction.

(h) Reservation of Shares. During the Exercise Period, the Company shall at all times reserve and keep available out of its authorized but unissued Common Stock or other securities constituting Warrant Shares, solely for the purpose of issuance upon the exercise of this Warrant, the maximum number of Warrant Shares issuable upon the exercise of this Warrant, and the par value per Warrant Share shall at all times be less than or equal to the applicable Exercise Price. The Company shall not increase the par value of any Warrant Shares receivable upon the exercise of this Warrant above the Exercise Price then in effect and shall take all such actions as may be necessary or appropriate in order that the Company may validly and legally issue fully paid and nonassessable shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of this Warrant.

**4. Adjustment to Exercise Price and Number of Warrant Shares.** The Exercise Price and the number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant shall be subject to adjustment from time to time as provided in this Section 4.

(a) Adjustment to Exercise Price and Warrant Shares Upon Dividend, Subdivision or Combination of Common Stock. If the Company shall, at any time or from time to time after the date hereof (i) pay a dividend or make any other distribution upon the Common Stock or any other capital stock of the Company payable in shares of Common Stock, or (ii) subdivide (by any stock split, recapitalization or otherwise) its outstanding shares of Common Stock into a greater number of shares, then the Exercise Price in effect immediately prior to any such dividend, distribution or subdivision shall be proportionately reduced and the number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant shall be proportionately increased. If the Company at any time combines (by combination, reverse stock split or otherwise) its outstanding shares of Common Stock into a smaller number of shares, the Exercise Price in effect immediately prior to such combination shall be proportionately increased and the number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant shall be proportionately decreased. Any adjustment under this Section 4(a) shall become effective concurrent at the time such dividend, subdivision or combination becomes effective.

(b) Adjustment to Exercise Price and Warrant Shares upon Reorganization, Reclassification, Consolidation or Merger. After the date hereof, in the event of any (i) capital reorganization of the Company, (ii) reclassification of the stock of the Company (other than (x) a change in par value, from par value to no par value, or from no par value to par value, or (y) as a result of a stock dividend or subdivision, split-up or combination of shares), (iii) consolidation or merger of the Company with or into another Person, (iv) sale of all or substantially all of the Company's assets to another Person or (v) other similar transaction (other than any such transaction covered by Section 4(a) above), in each case which entitles the holders of Common Stock to receive (either directly or upon subsequent liquidation) stock, securities or assets with respect to or in exchange for Common Stock, each Warrant shall, immediately after such reorganization, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale or similar transaction, remain outstanding and shall thereafter, in lieu of or in addition to (as the case may be) the number of Warrant Shares then exercisable under this Warrant, be exercisable for the kind and number of shares of stock or other securities or assets of the Company or of the successor Person resulting from such transaction to which the Holder would have been entitled upon such reorganization, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale or similar transaction if the Holder had exercised this Warrant in full immediately prior to the time of such reorganization, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale or similar transaction and acquired the applicable number of Warrant Shares then issuable hereunder as a result of such exercise; and, in such case, appropriate adjustment (in form and substance determined by the Board in its reasonable discretion) shall be made with respect to the Holder's rights under this Warrant to insure that the provisions of this Section 4 hereof shall thereafter be applicable, as nearly as possible, to this Warrant in relation to any shares of stock, securities or assets thereafter acquirable upon exercise of this Warrant (including, in the case of any consolidation, merger, sale or similar transaction in which the successor or purchasing Person is other than the Company, an immediate adjustment in the Exercise Price to the value per share for the Common Stock reflected by the terms of such consolidation, merger, sale or similar transaction, and a corresponding immediate adjustment to the number of Warrant Shares acquirable upon exercise of this Warrant without regard to any limitations or restrictions on exercise, if the value so reflected is less than the Exercise Price in effect immediately prior to such consolidation, merger, sale or similar transaction). The provisions of this Section 4(b) shall similarly apply to successive reorganizations, reclassifications, consolidations, mergers, sales or similar transactions. Subject to Section 5 hereof, the Company shall not effect any such reorganization, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale or similar transaction unless, prior to the consummation thereof, the successor Person (if other than the Company) resulting from such reorganization, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale or similar transaction, shall assume, by written instrument substantially similar in form and substance to this Warrant, the obligation to deliver to the Holder such shares of stock, securities or assets which, in accordance with the foregoing provisions, such Holder shall be entitled to receive upon exercise of this Warrant. With respect to any corporate event or other transaction contemplated by the provisions of this Section 4(b), the Holder shall have the right to elect prior to the consummation of such event or transaction, to give effect to the exercise rights contained in Section 3 hereof instead of giving effect to the provisions contained in this Section 4(b) with respect to this Warrant.

(c) Subsequent Equity Sales. If the Company or any Subsidiary thereof, as applicable, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding, shall sell or grant any option to purchase, or sell or grant any right to reprice, or otherwise dispose of or issue (or announce any offer, sale, grant or any option to purchase or other disposition) any Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents, at an effective price per share less than the Exercise Price then in effect (such lower price, the “**Base Share Price**” and such issuances collectively, a “**Dilutive Issuance**”) (it being understood and agreed that if the holder of the Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents so issued shall at any time, whether by operation of purchase price adjustments, reset provisions, floating conversion, exercise or exchange prices or otherwise, or due to warrants, options or rights per share which are issued in connection with such issuance, be entitled to receive Warrant Shares at an effective price per share that is less than the Exercise Price, such issuance shall be deemed to have occurred for less than the Exercise Price on such date of the Dilutive Issuance at such effective price), then simultaneously with the consummation of each Dilutive Issuance the Exercise Price shall be reduced and only reduced to equal the Base Share Price and the number of Warrant Shares issuable hereunder shall be increased such that the aggregate Exercise Price payable hereunder, after taking into account the decrease in the Exercise Price, shall be equal to the aggregate Exercise Price prior to such adjustment. Such adjustment shall be made whenever such Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents are issued. The Company shall notify the Holder, in writing, no later than the Trading Day following the issuance or deemed issuance of any Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents subject to this Section 4(c), indicating therein the applicable issuance price, or applicable reset price, exchange price, conversion price and other pricing terms (such notice, the “**Dilutive Issuance Notice**”). For purposes of clarification, whether or not the Company provides a Dilutive Issuance Notice pursuant to this Section 4(c), upon the occurrence of any Dilutive Issuance, the Holder is entitled to receive a number of Warrant Shares based upon the Base Share Price regardless of whether the Holder accurately refers to the Base Share Price in the Notice of Exercise. If the Company enters into a variable rate transaction, the Company shall be deemed to have issued Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents at the lowest possible conversion or exercise price at which such securities may be converted or exercised.

(d) Certain Events. If any event of the type contemplated by the provisions of this Section 4 but not expressly provided for by such provisions occurs, then the Board shall make an appropriate adjustment in the Exercise Price and the number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant so as to protect the rights of the Holder in a manner consistent with the provisions of this Section 4; provided, that no such adjustment pursuant to this Section 4(c) shall increase the Exercise Price or decrease the number of Warrant Shares issuable as otherwise determined pursuant to this Section 4.

(e) Certificate as to Adjustment.

(i) As promptly as reasonably practicable following any adjustment of the Exercise Price that results in an increase or decrease of the Exercise Price of \$0.01 or more, but in any event not later than ten (10) Business Days thereafter, the Company shall furnish to the Holder a certificate of an executive officer setting forth in reasonable detail such adjustment and the facts upon which it is based and certifying the calculation thereof.

(f) Notices. In the event:

(i) that the Company shall take a record of the holders of its Common Stock (or other capital stock or securities at the time issuable upon exercise of the Warrant) for the purpose of entitling or enabling them to receive any dividend or other distribution, to receive any right to subscribe for or purchase any shares of capital stock of any class or any other securities, or to receive any other security; or

(ii) of any capital reorganization of the Company, any reclassification of the Common Stock of the Company, any consolidation or merger of the Company with or into another Person, or sale of all or substantially all of the Company's assets to another Person; or

(iii) of the voluntary or involuntary dissolution, liquidation or winding-up of the Company;

then, and in each such case, the Company shall send or cause to be sent to the Holder at least twenty (20) days prior to the applicable record date or the applicable expected effective date, as the case may be, for the event, a written notice specifying, as the case may be, (A) the record date for such dividend, distribution or other right or action, and a description of such dividend, distribution or other right, or (B) the effective date on which such reorganization, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, dissolution, liquidation or winding-up is proposed to take place, and the date, if any is to be fixed, as of which the books of the Company shall close or a record shall be taken with respect to which the holders of record of Common Stock (or such other capital stock or securities at the time issuable upon exercise of the Warrant) shall be entitled to exchange their shares of Common Stock (or such other capital stock or securities) for securities or other property deliverable upon such reorganization, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, dissolution, liquidation or winding-up, and the amount per share and character of such exchange applicable to the Warrant and the Warrant Shares.

**5. Sale Event.** Notwithstanding anything in this Warrant to the Contrary, the Company shall have the right (exercisable in the sole and absolute discretion of the Board), but not the obligation, in connection with a Sale Event to make or provide for a cash payment to Holder, in exchange for the cancellation of this Warrant, in an amount equal to the difference between (a) the value as determined by the Board of the consideration payable, or otherwise to be received by stockholders, per share of Common Stock pursuant to a Sale Event multiplied by the number of Warrant Shares then issuable under this Warrant and (b) the Aggregate Exercise Price of all such Warrant Shares, subject to the other terms and conditions of the Sale Event (such as representations and warranties, holdback and escrow amounts, indemnification obligations and purchase price adjustments) to the extent applicable to Common Stock holders.

**6. Restrictions on Exercise.** Notwithstanding anything in this Warrant to the contrary, this Warrant may not be exercised if the issuance of Warrant Shares upon such exercise or if the method of payment for such Warrant Shares would constitute a violation of any applicable laws or regulations, including, without limitation, applicable federal and state securities laws and regulations. The Company may require Holder to make any representations and warranties to the Company as may be required by any applicable law or regulation (including, without limitation, applicable federal and state securities laws and regulations) before allowing this Warrant to be exercised. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, Warrant Shares issued upon exercise of this Warrant may not be issued in the name of any Person other than Holder unless the transfer conditions referred to in the legend endorsed on the cover page of this Warrant have been complied with to the satisfaction of the Company. In addition, no Warrant Shares will be issued pursuant to the exercise of this Warrant unless such issuance and such exercise comply with all relevant requirements of any stock exchange upon which the Common Stock may then be listed.

**7. Transfer of Warrant.** Subject to the transfer conditions referred to in the legend endorsed on the cover page of this Warrant, this Warrant and all rights hereunder are transferable, in whole or in part, by the Holder without charge to the Holder, upon surrender of this Warrant to the Company at its then principal executive offices with a properly completed and duly executed Assignment in the form attached hereto as **Exhibit B**, together with funds sufficient to pay any transfer taxes described in Section 3(f)(iv) hereof in connection with the making of such transfer. Upon such compliance, surrender and delivery and, if required, such payment, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in the name of the assignee or assignees and in the denominations specified in such instrument of assignment, and shall issue to the assignor a new Warrant evidencing the portion of this Warrant, if any, not so assigned and this Warrant shall promptly be cancelled.

**8. Holder Not Deemed a Stockholder; Limitations on Liability.** Prior to the issuance to the Holder of the Warrant Shares to which the Holder is then entitled to receive upon the due exercise of this Warrant, the Holder shall not be entitled to vote or receive dividends or be deemed the holder of shares of capital stock of the Company for any purpose, nor shall anything contained in this Warrant be construed to confer upon the Holder, as such, any of the rights of a stockholder of the Company or any right to vote, give or withhold consent to any corporate action (whether any reorganization, issue of stock, reclassification of stock, consolidation, merger, conveyance or otherwise), receive notice of meetings, receive dividends or subscription rights, or otherwise. In addition, nothing contained in this Warrant shall be construed as imposing any liabilities on the Holder to purchase any securities (upon exercise of this Warrant or otherwise) or as a stockholder of the Company, whether such liabilities are asserted by the Company or by creditors of the Company.

**9. Replacement on Loss; Division and Combination.**

(a) Replacement of Warrant on Loss. Upon receipt of evidence reasonably satisfactory to the Company of the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of this Warrant and upon delivery of an indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Company and, in case of mutilation, upon surrender of such Warrant for cancellation to the Company, the Company at its own expense shall execute and deliver to the Holder, in lieu hereof, a new Warrant of like tenor and exercisable for an equivalent number of Warrant Shares as the Warrant so lost, stolen, mutilated or destroyed; provided that, in the case of mutilation, no indemnity shall be required if this Warrant in identifiable form is surrendered to the Company for cancellation.

(b) Division and Combination of Warrant. Subject to compliance with the applicable provisions of this Warrant as to any transfer or other assignment that may be involved in such division or combination, this Warrant may be divided or, following any such division of this Warrant, subsequently combined with other Warrants, upon the surrender of this Warrant or Warrants to the Company at its then principal executive offices, together with a written notice specifying the names and denominations in which new Warrants are to be issued, signed by the respective Holders. Subject to compliance with the applicable provisions of this Warrant as to any transfer or assignment that may be involved in such division or combination, the Company shall at its own expense execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in exchange for the Warrant or Warrants so surrendered in accordance with such notice. Such new Warrant or Warrants shall be of like tenor to the surrendered Warrant or Warrants and shall be exercisable in the aggregate for an equivalent number of Warrant Shares as the Warrant or Warrants so surrendered in accordance with such notice.

**10. Compliance with the Securities Act**

(a) Agreement to Comply with the Securities Act; Legend. The Holder, by acceptance of this Warrant, agrees to comply in all respects with the provisions of this Section 10 and the restrictive legend requirements set forth on the face of this Warrant and further agrees that that Holder shall not offer, sell or otherwise dispose of this Warrant or any Warrant Shares to be issued upon exercise hereof except under circumstances that will not result in a violation of the Securities Act or applicable state or federal securities laws. This Warrant and all Warrant Shares issued upon exercise of this Warrant (unless registered under the Securities Act) shall be stamped or imprinted with a legend in substantially the following form:

“THIS WARRANT AND THE SECURITIES ISSUABLE UPON EXERCISE OF THIS WARRANT HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE “SECURITIES ACT”), OR QUALIFIED UNDER ANY STATE OR FOREIGN SECURITIES LAWS AND MAY NOT BE OFFERED FOR SALE, SOLD, PLEDGED, HYPOTHECATED OR OTHERWISE TRANSFERRED OR ASSIGNED UNLESS (I) A REGISTRATION STATEMENT COVERING SUCH SHARES IS EFFECTIVE UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND IS QUALIFIED UNDER APPLICABLE STATE AND FOREIGN LAW OR (II) THE TRANSACTION IS EXEMPT FROM THE REGISTRATION AND PROSPECTUS DELIVERY REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND THE QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS UNDER APPLICABLE STATE AND FOREIGN LAW AND, IF THE CORPORATION REQUESTS, AN OPINION SATISFACTORY TO THE CORPORATION TO SUCH EFFECT HAS BEEN RENDERED BY COUNSEL.”

(b) Representations of the Holder. In connection with the issuance of this Warrant and each exercise of this Warrant, the Holder specifically represents, as of the Original Issue Date and each Exercise Date, to the Company as follows:

(i) The Holder is an “accredited investor” as defined in Rule 501 of Regulation D promulgated under the Securities Act. The Holder is acquiring this Warrant and all Warrant Shares issued upon exercise hereof for investment for its own account and not with a view towards, or for resale in connection with, the public sale or distribution of this Warrant or the Warrant Shares, except pursuant to sales registered or exempted under the Securities Act.



(ii) The Holder understands and acknowledges that this Warrant and the Warrant Shares to be issued upon exercise hereof are “restricted securities” under the federal securities laws inasmuch as they are being acquired from the Company in a transaction not involving a public offering and that, under such laws and applicable regulations, such securities may be resold without registration under the Securities Act only in certain limited circumstances. In addition, the Holder represents that it is familiar with Rule 144 under the Securities Act, as presently in effect, and understands the resale limitations imposed thereby and by the Securities Act.

(iii) The Holder acknowledges that it can bear the economic and financial risk of its investment for an indefinite period and has such knowledge and experience in financial or business matters that it is capable of evaluating the merits and risks of the investment in the Warrant and the Warrant Shares. Subject to Section 10(b)(iv) below, the Holder has had an opportunity to ask questions and receive answers from the Company regarding the terms and conditions of the offering of the Warrant and the business, properties, prospects and financial condition of the Company.

(iv) The Holder acknowledges and agrees that neither the Company, nor any officer, director, employee or representative of the Company, nor any other Person has made or is making any representations or warranties of any kind or nature whatsoever, express or implied, beyond those expressly given by the Company in this Warrant and in the Securities Purchase Agreement.

**11. Warrant Register.** The Company shall keep and properly maintain at its principal executive offices books for the registration of this Warrant and any transfers of this Warrant. The Company may deem and treat the Person in whose name the Warrant is registered on such register as the Holder thereof for all purposes, and the Company shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary, except any assignment, division, combination or other transfer of the Warrant effected in accordance with the provisions of this Warrant.

**12. Notices.** All notices, requests, consents, claims, demands, waivers and other communications hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been given: (a) when delivered by hand (with written confirmation of receipt); (b) when received by the addressee if sent by a nationally recognized overnight courier (receipt requested); (c) on the date sent by e-mail of a PDF (or similar electronic format) document (with confirmation of transmission) if sent during normal business hours of the recipient, and on the next Business Day if sent after normal business hours of the recipient; or (d) on the fourth day after the date mailed, by USPS certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid. Such communications must be sent to the respective parties at the addresses indicated below (or at such other address for a party as shall be specified in a notice given in accordance with this Section 12).

If to the Company:	Alzamend Neuro, Inc. 3802 Spectrum Blvd., Suite 112C Tampa, FL 33612 Attention: Investor Relations Telephone: (844) 722-6333
--------------------	--

If to the Holder, to their registered address.	Ault Life Sciences, LLC
--	-------------------------

**13. Cumulative Remedies.** The rights and remedies provided in this Warrant are cumulative and are not exclusive of, and are in addition to and not in substitution for any other rights or remedies available at law, in equity or otherwise.

**14. Equitable Relief.** Each of the Company and the Holder acknowledges that a breach or threatened breach by such party of any of its obligations under this Warrant would give rise to irreparable harm to the other party hereto for which monetary damages would not be an adequate remedy and hereby agrees that in the event of a breach or a threatened breach by such party of any such obligations, the other party hereto shall, in addition to any and all other rights and remedies that may be available to it in respect of such breach, be entitled to equitable relief, including a restraining order, an injunction, specific performance and any other relief that may be available from a court of competent jurisdiction.

**15. Entire Agreement.** This Warrant, together with the Securities Purchase Agreement, constitutes the sole and entire agreement of the parties to this Warrant with respect to the subject matter contained herein, and supersedes all prior and contemporaneous understandings and agreements, both written and oral, with respect to such subject matter. In the event of any inconsistency between the provisions of this Warrant and the provisions of the Securities Purchase Agreement, the provisions of this Warrant shall control.

**16. Successor and Assigns.** This Warrant and the rights evidenced hereby shall be binding upon and shall inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and the successors of the Company and the successors and permitted assigns of the Holder. Such successors and/or permitted assigns of the Holder shall be deemed to be a Holder for all purposes hereunder.

**17. No Third-Party Beneficiaries.** This Warrant is for the sole benefit of the Company and the Holder and their respective successors and, in the case of the Holder, permitted assigns and nothing herein, express or implied, is intended to or shall confer upon any other Person any legal or equitable right, benefit or remedy of any nature whatsoever, under or by reason of this Warrant.

**18. Headings.** The headings in this Warrant are for reference only and shall not affect the interpretation of this Warrant.

**19. Amendment and Modification; Waiver.** This Warrant may only be amended, modified or supplemented by an agreement in writing signed by each party hereto. No waiver by the Company or the Holder of any of the provisions hereof shall be effective unless explicitly set forth in writing and signed by the party so waiving. No waiver by any party shall operate or be construed as a waiver in respect of any failure, breach or default not expressly identified by such written waiver, whether of a similar or different character, and whether occurring before or after that waiver. No failure to exercise, or delay in exercising, any rights, remedy, power or privilege arising from this Warrant shall operate or be construed as a waiver thereof; nor shall any single or partial exercise of any right, remedy, power or privilege hereunder preclude any other or further exercise thereof or the exercise of any other right, remedy, power or privilege.

**20. Severability.** If any term or provision of this Warrant is invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any jurisdiction, such invalidity, illegality or unenforceability shall not affect any other term or provision of this Warrant or invalidate or render unenforceable such term or provision in any other jurisdiction.

**21. Governing Law.** This Warrant shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York without giving effect to any choice or conflict of law provision or rule (whether of the State of New York or any other jurisdiction) that would cause the application of laws of any jurisdiction other than those of the State of New York.

**22. Submission to Jurisdiction.** Any legal suit, action or proceeding arising out of or based upon this Warrant or the transactions contemplated hereby may be instituted in the federal courts of the United States of America or the courts of the State of New York in each case located in the New York, and each party irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of such courts in any such suit, action or proceeding. Service of process, summons, notice or other document by certified or registered mail to such party's address set forth herein shall be effective service of process for any suit, action or other proceeding brought in any such court. The parties irrevocably and unconditionally waive any objection to the laying of venue of any suit, action or any proceeding in such courts and irrevocably waive and agree not to plead or claim in any such court that any such suit, action or proceeding brought in any such court has been brought in an inconvenient forum.

**23. Waiver of Jury Trial.** Each party acknowledges and agrees that any controversy which may arise under this Warrant is likely to involve complicated and difficult issues and, therefore, to the fullest extent permitted by law, each such party irrevocably and unconditionally waives any right it may have to a trial by jury in respect of any legal action arising out of or relating to this Warrant or the transactions contemplated hereby.

**24. Counterparts.** This Warrant may be executed in counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together shall be deemed to be one and the same agreement. A signed copy of this Warrant delivered by facsimile, e-mail or other means of electronic transmission shall be deemed to have the same legal effect as delivery of an original signed copy of this Warrant.

**25. No Strict Construction.** This Warrant shall be construed without regard to any presumption or rule requiring construction or interpretation against the party drafting an instrument or causing any instrument to be drafted.

[SIGNATURE PAGE FOLLOWS]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has duly executed this Warrant on the Original Issue Date.

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**

By: /s/ Kenneth S. Cragun  
Name: Kenneth S. Cragun  
Title: Chief Financial Officer

**EXHIBIT A**  
**EXERCISE AGREEMENT**

TO: **ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**

(1) The undersigned Holder hereby exercises the right to purchase \_\_\_\_\_ shares of Common Stock of the Company pursuant to the terms of the attached Warrant, and tenders herewith payment of the aggregate Exercise Price. Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined shall have the respective meanings set forth in the Warrant.

(2) The Holder pays the Aggregate Exercise Price pursuant to Section 3(b)(i) with respect to \_\_\_\_\_ shares of Common Stock and the Holder is herewith paying a sum of \$\_\_\_\_\_ to the Company in accordance with the terms of the Warrant.

The undersigned Holder represents that it is acquiring the shares upon exercise of the Warrant for its own account and not with a view toward, or for resale in connection with, the public sale or distribution of those shares, except pursuant to sales registered or exempted under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), and that as of the date hereof, the undersigned is an “accredited investor” as that term is defined in Rule 501(a) of Regulation D promulgated by the Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Act.

Name of Holder: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Holder: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized  
Signatory (if an entity): \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized  
Signatory (if an entity): \_\_\_\_\_

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

**EXHIBIT B**

**ASSIGNMENT**

(To be signed only on transfer of Warrant)

For value received, the undersigned hereby sells, assigns, and transfers unto the person(s) named below under the heading "Transferees" the right represented by the within Warrant to purchase shares of Common Stock of ALZAMEND NEURO, INC. into which the within Warrant relates specified under the headings "Number of Warrants Transferred," respectively, opposite the name(s) of such person(s) and appoints each and any officer of the Corporation as attorney to transfer the undersigned's respective right on the register of warrants maintained by the Corporation with full power of substitution in the premises.

Transferees	Address	Number of Warrants Transferred
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature must conform to name of Holder as specified on the face of the Warrant)

Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Guarantee

ACCEPTED AND AGREED:

**[TRANSFEREE]**

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name)

The signature of the Holder to this Assignment must correspond exactly with the name of the Holder as set forth on the face of the Warrant in every particular and the signature must be guaranteed by a U.S. chartered bank or by a medallion signature guarantee from a member of a recognized Signature Medallion Guarantee Program.

\_\_\_\_\_

**SUBSCRIPTION AGREEMENT – NOTICE TO INVESTORS**

THIS INVESTMENT INVOLVES A HIGH DEGREE OF RISK. THIS INVESTMENT IS SUITABLE ONLY FOR PERSONS WHO CAN BEAR THE ECONOMIC RISK FOR AN INDEFINITE PERIOD OF TIME AND WHO CAN AFFORD TO LOSE THEIR ENTIRE INVESTMENT. FURTHERMORE, INVESTORS MUST UNDERSTAND THAT SUCH INVESTMENT IS ILLIQUID AND IS EXPECTED TO CONTINUE TO BE ILLIQUID FOR AN INDEFINITE PERIOD OF TIME. NO PUBLIC MARKET EXISTS FOR THE SECURITIES.

THE SECURITIES OFFERED HEREBY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE “SECURITIES ACT”), OR ANY STATE SECURITIES OR BLUE SKY LAWS AND ARE BEING OFFERED AND SOLD IN RELIANCE ON EXEMPTIONS FROM THE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS OF THE ACT AND STATE SECURITIES OR BLUE SKY LAWS. ALTHOUGH AN OFFERING STATEMENT HAS BEEN FILED WITH THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (THE “SEC”), THAT OFFERING STATEMENT DOES NOT INCLUDE THE SAME INFORMATION THAT WOULD BE INCLUDED IN A REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE ACT. THE SECURITIES HAVE NOT BEEN APPROVED OR DISAPPROVED BY THE SEC, ANY STATE SECURITIES COMMISSION OR OTHER REGULATORY AUTHORITY, NOR HAVE ANY OF THE FOREGOING AUTHORITIES PASSED UPON THE MERITS OF THIS OFFERING OR THE ADEQUACY OR ACCURACY OF THE SUBSCRIPTION AGREEMENT OR ANY OTHER MATERIALS OR INFORMATION MADE AVAILABLE TO PROSPECTIVE INVESTOR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, OVER THE WEB-BASED PLATFORM MAINTAINED BY SOS BACK OFFICE SOLUTIONS, LLC (THE “PLATFORM”).

THE SECURITIES CANNOT BE SOLD OR OTHERWISE TRANSFERRED EXCEPT IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES ACT. IN ADDITION, THE SECURITIES CANNOT BE SOLD OR OTHERWISE TRANSFERRED EXCEPT IN COMPLIANCE WITH APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES OR “BLUE SKY” LAWS.

INVESTORS WHO ARE NOT “ACCREDITED INVESTORS” (AS THAT TERM IS DEFINED IN SECTION 501 OF REGULATION D PROMULGATED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT) ARE SUBJECT TO LIMITATIONS ON THE AMOUNT THEY MAY INVEST, AS SET OUT IN SECTION 4(g). THE COMPANY IS RELYING ON THE REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES SET FORTH BY EACH INVESTOR IN THIS SUBSCRIPTION AGREEMENT AND THE OTHER INFORMATION PROVIDED BY INVESTOR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING TO DETERMINE THE APPLICABILITY TO THIS OFFERING OF EXEMPTIONS FROM THE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS OF THE SECURITIES ACT.

PROSPECTIVE INVESTORS MAY NOT TREAT THE CONTENTS OF THE SUBSCRIPTION AGREEMENT, THE OFFERING CIRCULAR OR ANY OF THE OTHER MATERIALS AVAILABLE ON THE PLATFORM OR PROVIDED BY THE COMPANY (COLLECTIVELY, THE “OFFERING MATERIALS”), OR ANY PRIOR OR SUBSEQUENT COMMUNICATIONS FROM THE COMPANY OR ANY OF ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES OR AGENTS (INCLUDING “TESTING THE WATERS” MATERIALS) AS INVESTMENT, LEGAL OR TAX ADVICE. IN MAKING AN INVESTMENT DECISION, INVESTORS MUST RELY ON THEIR OWN EXAMINATION OF THE COMPANY AND THE TERMS OF THIS OFFERING, INCLUDING THE MERITS AND THE RISKS INVOLVED.

EACH PROSPECTIVE INVESTOR SHOULD CONSULT THE INVESTOR’S OWN COUNSEL, ACCOUNTANTS AND OTHER PROFESSIONAL ADVISORS AS TO INVESTMENT, LEGAL, TAX AND OTHER RELATED MATTERS CONCERNING THE INVESTOR’S PROPOSED INVESTMENT.

---

THE OFFERING MATERIALS MAY CONTAIN FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS AND INFORMATION RELATING TO, AMONG OTHER THINGS, THE COMPANY, ITS BUSINESS PLAN AND STRATEGY, AND ITS INDUSTRY. THESE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS ARE BASED ON THE BELIEFS OF, ASSUMPTIONS MADE BY, AND INFORMATION CURRENTLY AVAILABLE TO THE COMPANY'S MANAGEMENT. WHEN USED IN THE OFFERING MATERIALS, THE WORDS "ESTIMATE," "PROJECT," "BELIEVE," "ANTICIPATE," "INTEND," "EXPECT" AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS ARE INTENDED TO IDENTIFY FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS, WHICH CONSTITUTE FORWARD LOOKING STATEMENTS. THESE STATEMENTS REFLECT MANAGEMENT'S CURRENT VIEWS WITH RESPECT TO FUTURE EVENTS AND ARE SUBJECT TO RISKS AND UNCERTAINTIES THAT COULD CAUSE THE COMPANY'S ACTUAL RESULTS TO DIFFER MATERIALLY FROM THOSE CONTAINED IN THE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS. INVESTORS ARE CAUTIONED NOT TO PLACE UNDUE RELIANCE ON THESE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS, WHICH SPEAK ONLY AS OF THE DATE ON WHICH THEY ARE MADE. THE COMPANY DOES NOT UNDERTAKE ANY OBLIGATION TO REVISE OR UPDATE THESE FORWARDLOOKING STATEMENTS TO REFLECT EVENTS OR CIRCUMSTANCES AFTER SUCH DATE OR TO REFLECT THE OCCURRENCE OF UNANTICIPATED EVENTS.

THE COMPANY MAY NOT BE OFFERING THE SECURITIES IN EVERY STATE. THE OFFERING MATERIALS DO NOT CONSTITUTE AN OFFER OR SOLICITATION IN ANY STATE OR JURISDICTION IN WHICH THE SECURITIES ARE NOT BEING OFFERED.

THE INFORMATION PRESENTED IN THE OFFERING MATERIALS WAS PREPARED BY THE COMPANY SOLELY FOR THE USE BY PROSPECTIVE INVESTORS IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING. NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES ARE MADE AS TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN ANY OFFERING MATERIALS, AND NOTHING CONTAINED IN THE OFFERING MATERIALS IS OR SHOULD BE RELIED UPON AS A PROMISE OR REPRESENTATION AS TO THE FUTURE PERFORMANCE OF THE COMPANY.

THE COMPANY RESERVES THE RIGHT IN ITS SOLE DISCRETION AND FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER TO MODIFY, AMEND AND/OR WITHDRAW ALL OR A PORTION OF THE OFFERING AND/OR ACCEPT OR REJECT, IN WHOLE OR IN PART, FOR ANY REASON OR FOR NO REASON, ANY PROSPECTIVE INVESTMENT IN THE SECURITIES OR TO ALLOT TO ANY PROSPECTIVE INVESTOR LESS THAN THE DOLLAR AMOUNT OF SECURITIES SUCH INVESTOR DESIRES TO PURCHASE. EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE INDICATED, THE OFFERING MATERIALS SPEAK AS OF THEIR DATE. NEITHER THE DELIVERY NOR THE PURCHASE OF THE SECURITIES SHALL, UNDER ANY CIRCUMSTANCES, CREATE ANY IMPLICATION THAT THERE HAS BEEN NO CHANGE IN THE AFFAIRS OF THE COMPANY SINCE THAT DATE.

---



## **SUBSCRIPTION AGREEMENT**

This subscription agreement (the “**Agreement**”) is entered into by and between Alzamend Neuro, Inc., a Delaware corporation (hereinafter the “**Company**”) and the undersigned (hereinafter the “**Investor**”) as of the date set forth on the signature page hereto. Any term used but not defined herein shall have the meaning set forth in the Offering Circular.

### **RECITALS:**

**WHEREAS**, the Company desires to issue a maximum of 6,000,000 shares of common stock (the “**Shares**”) of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”); and

**WHEREAS**, Investor desires to acquire that number of Shares as is set forth on the signature page hereof for the purchase price set forth herein.

**NOW, THEREFORE**, for and in consideration of the premises and the mutual covenants hereinafter set forth, the parties hereto do hereby agree as follows:

#### **1. Subscription.**

(a) The Investor hereby irrevocably subscribes for and agrees to purchase the number of Shares set forth on the signature page hereto at a purchase price of \$7.50 per such share (the “**Per Share Purchase Price**”), rounded down to the nearest whole share based on Investor’s subscription amount, upon the terms and conditions set forth herein. The aggregate purchase price for the Shares with respect to each Investor (the “**Purchase Price**”) is payable in the manner provided in Section 2(a) below.

(b) Investor understands that the Shares are being offered pursuant to the Offering Circular dated \_\_\_\_\_, 2020 and its exhibits (collectively, the “**Offering Circular**”) as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**SEC**”). By subscribing to the Offering, the Investor acknowledges that Investor has received and reviewed a copy of the Offering Circular and any other information required by Investor to make an investment decision with respect to the Shares.

(c) This subscription may be accepted or rejected in whole or in part, for any reason or for no reason, at any time prior to the Termination Date (as hereinafter defined), by the Company at its sole and absolute discretion. In addition, the Company, at its sole and absolute discretion, may allocate to Investor only a portion of the number of the Shares that Investor has subscribed for hereunder. The Company will notify Investor whether this subscription is accepted (whether in whole or in part) or rejected. If Investor’s subscription is rejected, Investor’s payment (or portion thereof if partially rejected) will be returned to Investor without interest and all of Investor’s obligations hereunder shall terminate.

(d) The aggregate number of Shares that may be sold by the Company in this offering shall not exceed \$45,000,000 (the “**Maximum Offering**”). This offering will terminate on the earlier of (i) the Company’s decision to terminate Offering; (ii) September 1, 2020, subject to extension for up to ninety (90) days in the sole discretion of the Company; or (iii) the date on which the Maximum Offering is sold (in either case, the “**Termination Date**”). The Company may elect at any time to close all or any portion of this Offering on various dates at or prior to the Termination Date (each, a “**Closing**”).

(e) In the event of rejection of this subscription in its entirety, or in the event the sale of the Shares (or any portion thereof) to an Investor is not consummated for any reason, this Subscription Agreement shall have no force or effect, except for Section 5 hereof, which shall remain in force and effect.

(f) The terms of this Subscription Agreement shall be binding upon Investor and its permitted transferees, heirs, successors and assigns (collectively, the “**Transferees**”); provided, however, that for any such transfer to be deemed effective, the Transferee shall have executed and delivered to the Company in advance an instrument in form acceptable to the Company in its sole discretion, pursuant to which the proposed Transferee shall acknowledge and agree to be bound by the representations and warranties of Investor and the terms of this Subscription Agreement. No transfer of this Agreement may be made without the consent of the Company, which may be withheld in its sole and absolute discretion.

---

## 2. Purchase Procedure.

(a) Payment. The Purchase Price shall be paid simultaneously with Investor's subscription. Investor shall deliver payment for the aggregate purchase price of the Shares by wire transfer to an account designated by the Company.

(b) Escrow Arrangements. Payment for the Shares by Investor shall be received by SOS Back Office Solutions, LLC, Inc. (the "**Escrow Agent**") from Investor by transfer of immediately available funds via wire prior to the applicable Closing in the amount of Investor's subscription using the instructions below. Upon such Closing, the Escrow Agent shall release such funds to the Company. Investor shall receive notice and evidence of the digital entry of the number of the Shares owned by Investor reflected in their investor account.

Bank Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Routing No. \_\_\_\_\_

Account Number \_\_\_\_\_

Account Name \_\_\_\_\_

3. **Representations and Warranties of the Company.** The Company represents and warrants to Investor that the following representations and warranties are true and complete in all material respects as of the date of each Closing:

(a) Organization and Standing. The Company is a corporation duly formed, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware. The Company has all requisite power and authority to own and operate its properties and assets, to execute and deliver this Subscription Agreement, the Shares and any other agreements or instruments required hereunder. The Company is duly qualified and is authorized to do business and is in good standing as a foreign corporation in all jurisdictions in which the nature of its activities and of its properties (both owned and leased) makes such qualification necessary, except for those jurisdictions in which failure to do so would not have a material adverse effect on the Company or its business.

(b) Issuance of the Shares. The issuance, sale and delivery of the Shares in accordance with this Subscription Agreement have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company. The Shares, when issued, sold and delivered against payment therefor in accordance with the provisions of this Subscription Agreement, will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

(c) Authority for Agreement. The acceptance by the Company of this Subscription Agreement and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby are within the Company's powers and have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company. Upon the Company's acceptance of this Subscription Agreement, this Subscription Agreement shall constitute a valid and binding agreement of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except (i) as limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, and other laws of general application affecting enforcement of creditors' rights generally, (ii) as limited by laws relating to the availability of specific performance, injunctive relief, or other equitable remedies and (iii) with respect to provisions relating to indemnification and contribution, as limited by considerations of public policy and by federal or state securities laws.

(d) No Filings. Assuming the accuracy of Investor's representations and warranties set forth in Section 4 hereof, no order, license, consent, authorization or approval of, or exemption by, or action by or in respect of, or notice to, or filing or registration with, any governmental body, agency or official is required by or with respect to the Company in connection with the acceptance, delivery and performance by the Company of this Subscription Agreement except (i) for such filings as may be required under Regulation A or under any applicable state securities laws, (ii) for such other filings and approvals as have been made or obtained, or (iii) where the failure to obtain any such order, license, consent, authorization, approval or exemption or give any such notice or make any filing or registration would not have a material adverse effect on the ability of the Company to perform its obligations hereunder.

(e) Capitalization. The outstanding shares of Common Stock, options, warrants and other securities of the Company immediately prior to the initial Closing is as set forth under the title "Description of Securities" in the Offering Circular. Except as set forth in the Offering Circular, there are no outstanding options, warrants, rights (including conversion or preemptive rights and rights of first refusal), or agreements of any kind (oral or written) for the purchase or acquisition from the Company of any of its securities.

( f ) Financial Statements. Complete copies of the Company's financial statements and the accompanying notes thereto for the respective periods then ended (collectively, the "**Financial Statements**"), have been made available to Investor and appear in the Offering Circular. The Financial Statements are based on the books and records of the Company and fairly present the financial condition of the Company as of the respective dates they were prepared and the results of the operations and cash flows of the Company for the respective periods indicated.

( g ) Litigation. Except as disclosed in the Offering Circular, there is no pending action, suit, proceeding, arbitration, mediation, complaint, claim, charge or investigation before any court, arbitrator, mediator or governmental body, or to the Company's knowledge, currently threatened in writing (a) against the Company or (b) to the Company's knowledge, against any consultant, officer, manager, director or key employee of the Company arising out of his or her consulting, employment or board relationship with the Company or that could otherwise materially impact the Company.

**4. Representations and Warranties of Investor.** By subscribing to the Offering, Investor (and, if Investor is purchasing the Shares subscribed for hereby in a fiduciary capacity, the person or persons for whom Investor is so purchasing) represents and warrants, which representations and warranties are true and complete in all material respects, as of the date of each Closing:

( a ) Requisite Power and Authority. Investor has all necessary power and authority under all applicable provisions of law to subscribe to the Offering, to execute and deliver this Subscription Agreement and to carry out the provisions thereof. All actions on Investor's part required for the lawful subscription to the offering have been or will be effectively taken prior to the Closing. Upon subscribing to the Offering, this Subscription Agreement will be a valid and binding obligation of Investor, enforceable in accordance with its terms, except (i) as limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or other laws of general application affecting enforcement of creditors' rights and (ii) as limited by general principles of equity that restrict the availability of equitable remedies.

( b ) Investment Experience. Investor has sufficient experience in financial and business matters to be capable of utilizing such information to evaluate the merits and risks of Investor's investment in the Shares, and to make an informed decision relating thereto. Alternatively, the Investor has utilized the services of a purchaser representative and together they have sufficient experience in financial and business matters that they are capable of utilizing such information to evaluate the merits and risks of Investor's investment in the Shares, and to make an informed decision relating thereto.

( c ) Investor Determination of Suitability. Investor has evaluated the risks of an investment in the Shares, including those described in the section of the Offering Circular entitled "Risk Factors," and has determined that the investment is suitable for Investor. Investor has adequate financial resources for an investment of this character. Investor could bear a complete loss of Investor's investment in the Company.

( d ) No Registration. Investor understands that the Shares are not being registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"), on the ground that the issuance thereof is exempt under Regulation A of Section 3(b) of the Securities Act, and that reliance on such exemption is predicated in part on the truth and accuracy of Investor's representations and warranties, and those of the other purchasers of the Shares in the offering. Investor further understands that the Shares are not being registered under the securities laws of any states on the basis that the issuance thereof is exempt as an offer and sale not involving a registrable public offering in such state, since the Shares are "covered securities" under the National Securities Market Improvement Act of 1996. Investor covenants not to sell, transfer or otherwise dispose of any Shares unless such Shares have been registered under the Securities Act and under applicable state securities laws, or exemptions from such registration requirements are available.

( e ) Illiquidity and Continued Economic Risk. Investor acknowledges and agrees that there is no ready public market for the Shares and that there is no guarantee that a market for their resale will ever exist. The Company has no obligation to list any of the Shares on any market or take any steps (including registration under the Securities Act or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended) with respect to facilitating trading or resale of the Shares. Investor must bear the economic risk of this investment indefinitely and Investor acknowledges that Investor is able to bear the economic risk of losing Investor's entire investment in the Shares.

(f) Accredited Investor Status or Investment Limits. Investor represents that either:

- (i) that Investor is an “accredited investor” within the meaning of Rule 501 of Regulation D under the Shares Act; or
- (ii) that the Purchase Price, together with any other amounts previously used to purchase Shares in this offering, does not exceed 10% of the greater of Investor’s annual income or net worth (or in the case where Investor is a non-natural person, their revenue or net assets for such Investor’s most recently completed fiscal year end).

Investor represents that to the extent it has any questions with respect to its status as an accredited investor, or the application of the investment limits, it has sought professional advice.

(g) Stockholder Information. Within five days after receipt of a request from the Company, Investor hereby agrees to provide such information with respect to its status as a stockholder (or potential stockholder) and to execute and deliver such documents as may reasonably be necessary to comply with any and all laws and regulations to which the Company is or may become subject, including, without limitation, the need to determine the accredited investor status of the Company’s stockholders. Investor further agrees that in the event it transfers any Shares, it will require the transferee of such Shares to agree to provide such information to the Company as a condition of such transfer.

(h) Valuation. Investor acknowledges that the Per Share Purchase Price of the Shares to be sold in this offering was set by the Company on the basis of the Company’s internal valuation and no warranties are made as to value. Investor further acknowledges that future offerings of securities of the Company may be made at lower valuations, with the result that Investor’s investment will bear a lower valuation.

(i) Domicile. Investor maintains Investor’s domicile (and is not a transient or temporary resident) at the address provided with Investors subscription.

(j) Foreign Investors. If Investor is not a United States person (as defined by Section 7701(a)(30) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended), Investor hereby represents that it has satisfied itself as to the full observance of the laws of its jurisdiction in connection with any invitation to subscribe for the Shares or any use of this Subscription Agreement, including (i) the legal requirements within its jurisdiction for the purchase of the Shares, (ii) any foreign exchange restrictions applicable to such purchase, (iii) any governmental or other consents that may need to be obtained, and (iv) the income tax and other tax consequences, if any, that may be relevant to the purchase, holding, redemption, sale, or transfer of the Shares. Investor’s subscription and payment for and continued beneficial ownership of the Shares will not violate any applicable securities or other laws of Investor’s jurisdiction.

**5. Indemnity.** The representations, warranties and covenants made by Investor herein shall survive the closing of this Subscription Agreement. Investor agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company and its respective officers, directors and affiliates, and each other person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever (including, but not limited to, any and all reasonable attorneys’ fees, including attorneys’ fees on appeal) and expenses reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any false representation or warranty or breach of failure by Investor to comply with any covenant or agreement made by Investor herein or in any other document furnished by Investor to any of the foregoing in connection with this transaction.

**6. Governing Law; Jurisdiction.** All questions concerning the construction, validity, enforcement and interpretation of the Offering Circular, including, without limitation, this Subscription Agreement, shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York, without regard to the principles of conflicts of law thereof. Each party agrees that all legal proceedings concerning the interpretations, enforcement and defense of the transactions contemplated by this Subscription Agreement and any documents included within the Offering Circular (whether brought against a party hereto or its respective affiliates, directors, officers, shareholders, partners, members, employees or agents) shall be commenced exclusively in the state and federal courts sitting in the City of New York. Each party hereby irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the state and federal courts sitting in the City of New York, Borough of Manhattan for the adjudication of any dispute hereunder or in connection herewith or with any transaction contemplated hereby or discussed herein (including with respect to the enforcement of any of the documents included within the Offering Circular), and hereby irrevocably waives, and agrees not to assert in any action or proceeding, any claim that it is not personally subject to the jurisdiction of any such court, that such action or proceeding is improper or is an inconvenient venue for such proceeding. Each party hereby irrevocably waives personal service of process and consents to process being served in any such action or proceeding by mailing a copy thereof via registered or certified mail or overnight delivery (with evidence of delivery) to such party at the address in effect for notices to it under this Subscription Agreement and agrees that such service shall constitute good and sufficient service of process and notice thereof. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to limit in any way any right to serve process in any other manner permitted by law. Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing contained in this Section 6 shall apply to any action that may arise under the Securities Act or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

7. **Notices.** Notice, requests, demands and other communications relating to this Subscription Agreement and the transactions contemplated herein shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given if and when (a) delivered personally, on the date of such delivery; or (b) mailed by registered or certified mail, postage prepaid, return receipt requested, in the third day after the posting thereof; or (c) emailed on the date of such delivery to the address of the respective parties as follows:

If to the Company, to:

Alzamend Neuro, Inc.  
50 W. Broadway, 3rd Floor, Salt Lake City, UT 84101  
Attn.: Philip Mansour, Chief Executive Officer

If to Investor, at Investor's address supplied in connection with this subscription, or to such other address as may be specified by written notice from time to time by the party entitled to receive such notice. Any notices, requests, demands or other communications by email shall be confirmed by letter given in accordance with (a) or (b) above.

8. **Miscellaneous.**

(a) All pronouns and any variations thereof shall be deemed to refer to the masculine, feminine, neuter, singular or plural, as the identity of the person or persons or entity or entities may require.

(b) Other than as set forth herein, this Subscription Agreement is not transferable or assignable by Investor.

(c) The representations, warranties and agreements contained herein shall be deemed to be made by and be binding upon Investor and its heirs, executors, administrators and successors and shall inure to the benefit of the Company and its successors and assigns.

(d) None of the provisions of this Subscription Agreement may be waived, changed or terminated orally or otherwise, except as specifically set forth herein or except by a writing signed by the Company and Investor.

(e) In the event any part of this Subscription Agreement is found to be void or unenforceable, the remaining provisions are intended to be separable and binding with the same effect as if the void or unenforceable part were never the subject of agreement.

(f) The invalidity, illegality or unenforceability of one or more of the provisions of this Subscription Agreement in any jurisdiction shall not affect the validity, legality or enforceability of the remainder of this Subscription Agreement in such jurisdiction or the validity, legality or enforceability of this Subscription Agreement, including any such provision, in any other jurisdiction, it being intended that all rights and obligations of the parties hereunder shall be enforceable to the fullest extent permitted by law.

(g) This Subscription Agreement supersedes all prior discussions and agreements between the parties, if any, with respect to the subject matter hereof and contains the sole and entire agreement between the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof.

(h) The terms and provisions of this Subscription Agreement are intended solely for the benefit of each party hereto and their respective successors and assigns, and it is not the intention of the parties to confer, and no provision hereof shall confer, third-party beneficiary rights upon any other person.

(i) The headings used in this Subscription Agreement have been inserted for convenience of reference only and do not define or limit the provisions hereof.

(j) No failure or delay by any party in exercising any right, power or privilege under this Subscription Agreement shall operate as a waiver thereof nor shall any single or partial exercise thereof preclude any other or further exercise thereof or the exercise of any other right, power or privilege. The rights and remedies herein provided shall be cumulative and not exclusive of any rights or remedies provided by law.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, this Subscription Agreement is executed as of the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2016.

Number of Shares Subscribed For: \_\_\_\_\_

Total Purchase Price: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Subscriber: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Subscriber: \_\_\_\_\_

Address of Subscriber: \_\_\_\_\_

Subscriber's SS# or tax ID#: \_\_\_\_\_

Please designate whether your Shares should be Issued in Book or Certificate:

\_\_\_\_\_ Book \_\_\_\_\_ Certificate Issued

**ACCEPTED BY: Alzamend Neuro, Inc.**

Signature of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Signatory: Philip E. Mansour, President and CEO

Date of Acceptance: \_\_\_\_\_, 2016

---



Dedicated to finding the treatment and cure for Alzheimer's Disease.

November 30, 2018

Dear Mr. Stephan Jackman,

This letter is an amendment to the CEO Offer Letter dated October 27, 2018 which detailed terms of your employment agreement. As of this date, you confirm your continued willingness to serve as the Chief Executive Officer ("CEO") of Alzamend Neuro, Inc. (the "Company") on the terms set forth below for a term of four years. This letter shall serve as a binding Memorandum of Understanding with a more definitive employment agreement detailing the job description and responsibilities, that will be provided within 30 calendar days of your acceptance of this letter.

The Company is pleased to offer you the following compensation detailed as follows:

1. Annual cash compensation of \$150,000.00 payable in monthly installments according to the Company's regular payroll schedule; and
2. Upon approval of the FDA IND application for LiProSal, the annual cash compensation will increase to \$180,000.00 payable in monthly installments according to the Company's regular payroll schedule; and upon approval of the FDA IND application for CAO22W, the annual cash compensation will increase to \$225,000.00 payable in monthly installments according to the Company's regular payroll schedule;
3. The Company shall grant you an option to purchase 5,000,000 shares of the Company's common stock exercisable for a period of seven (7) years at the Fair Market Value ("FMV"), currently \$1.00. For purposes of determining the FMV of a share of common stock as of any date, the FMV as of that date shall be, unless otherwise determined by the Company's Board of Directors (the "Board"), the closing sale price during regular trading hours of the common stock on the date on the principal securities market in which shares of common stock is then traded; or, if there were no trades on that date, the closing sale price during regular trading hours of the common stock on the first trading day prior to that date. If the common stock is not publicly traded at the time a determination of FMV is required to be made hereunder, the determination of such amount shall be made by the Board in such manner as it deems appropriate. The options shall vest pursuant to the following schedule:



50 West Broadway, 3<sup>rd</sup> Floor Salt Lake City, Utah 84101 USA 949.346.5822

[alzamendneuro.com](http://alzamendneuro.com)





- Three million options (3,000,000) shall vest ratably over 48 months beginning with the first month after the grant date.
  - One million options (1,000,000) shall vest upon approval of a NDA for LiProSal by the FDA within 36 months from November 1, 2018.
  - One million options (1,000,000) shall vest upon approval of a NDA for CAO2W by the FDA within 48 months from November 1, 2018.
4. During the Employment Period, you shall be entitled to an annual bonus (the “Annual Bonus”) if the Company meets or exceeds criteria adopted by the Compensation Committee, or if the Company has not established a Compensation Committee the Board (the “Compensation Committee”), for earning Bonuses which shall be adopted by the Compensation Committee annually. Bonuses shall be paid promptly after determination that the relevant targets have been met, it being understood that the attainment of any financial targets associated with any bonus shall not be determined until following the completion of the Company’s annual audit and public announcement. The Annual Bonus may consist of cash, common stock or a combination of the two. The Annual Bonus, if any, shall in part be determined based upon the successful attainment of the following milestones:
- A. Approval to conduct a Second Phase Clinical Trial for CAO22W;
  - B. Approval to conduct a Third Phase Clinical Trial for CAO22W;
  - C. Approval to conduct a Third Phase Clinical Trial for LiProSal;
  - D. Equity or debt financings.
5. Participation in the Company’s medical insurance and benefit program as well as in any and all other employment benefit programs offered, as established by the Company.
6. During the term of your employment with the Company, and for a period of three (3) years thereafter, you shall maintain in strict confidence all information that you have obtained or shall obtain from Alzamend which Alzamend has designated as “confidential” or which is, by its nature confidential, relating to Alzamend’s business, operations, properties, assets, services, condition (financial or otherwise), liabilities, employee relations, customers (including customer usage statistics), suppliers, prospects, technology, or trade secrets, except to the extent such information (i) is in the public domain through no act or omission of Alzamend, (ii) is required to be disclosed by law or a valid order by a court or other governmental body, or (iii) is independently learned by you outside of this relationship.

7. Additionally, the Company shall reimburse you for all of your out-of-pocket expenses incurred in connection with your duties as the CEO.

I am confident that your work will prove instrumental in helping us build a world-class company. Please confirm your acceptance of these terms by signing and dating this letter agreement and returning it to the undersigned. By signing this letter agreement, you reconfirm to the Company that you have no contractual commitments or other legal obligations that would prohibit you from performing your duties for the Company.

Very truly yours,

Alzamend Neuro, Inc.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Milton C. Ault, III  
Chairman of the Board of Directors



I have read and accept and agree to the above terms:

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Stephan Jackman

## STOCK PLEDGE AGREEMENT

This STOCK PLEDGE AGREEMENT ("Agreement") is made and entered as of this \_\_\_\_ day of June 11, 2019 by and between Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company maintaining a business address at 201 Shipyard Way, Suite E, Newport Beach California 92663 (the "**Pledgor**"), and Alzamend Neuro, Inc., a Delaware corporation with offices located at 3802 Spectrum Boulevard, Suite 112C, Tampa, Florida 33612, the intended beneficiary of the rights, privileges and benefits of this Stock Pledge Agreement (the "**Beneficiary**").

WHEREAS, Pledgor has issued to the Beneficiary a promissory note in the amount of Fifteen Million Dollars \$15,000,000 (the "**Note**") as payment for ten million (10,000,000) shares of the Beneficiary's Common Stock (the "**Shares**") pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement dated as of April 30, 2019 between the Pledgor and the Beneficiary (the "**Securities Purchase Agreement**");

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the promises contained herein and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and adequacy of which is hereby acknowledged, Pledgor hereby agrees with Beneficiary as follow:

1. Pledge of Security. The Pledgor hereby grants and pledges to Beneficiary, for the benefit of Beneficiary as security for the prompt payment in full when due, whether at stated maturity or acceleration, of all amounts currently or hereafter owed by Pledgor to Beneficiary under the Note, a security interest and a lien upon all of Pledgor's right, title and interest in and to the following (the "**Pledged Collateral**"):
    - (a) The Shares and any interests of Pledgor in the entries and on the books of any financial intermediary pertaining to the Shares, and all dividends (other than cash dividends), warrants, rights, instruments and other property or proceeds from time to time received, receivable or otherwise distributed in respect of or in exchange for any or all of the Shares;
    - (b) To the extent not covered by the security interest granted pursuant to section 1(a) above, all Proceeds of any or all of the foregoing Pledged Collateral. For purposes of this Agreement, the term "**Proceeds**" includes whatever is receivable or received when Pledged Collateral or proceeds are sold, exchanged, collected or otherwise disposed of, whether such disposition is voluntary or involuntary.
  2. Security For Obligations. This Agreement secures, and the Pledged Collateral is collateral security for, the prompt payment or performance in full when due, of the payment obligations of the Pledgor to the Beneficiary under the Note (the "**Obligations**").
-

3. Delivery of Pledged Collateral. All certificates or instruments representing or evidencing the Pledged Collateral shall be delivered to, and held by, Beneficiary, and shall be in suitable form for transfer by delivery or, as applicable, shall be accompanied by the appropriate endorsement of Pledgor, where necessary, or duly executed instruments of transfer or assignment in blank, all in form and substance satisfactory to Beneficiary. In the event that Pledgor shall fail to make any payment required under the Note when due (whether by acceleration or otherwise but after taking into account any applicable grace period set forth in the Note) (an “**Event of Default**”), Beneficiary shall have the right, at any time in its discretion and without notice to Pledgor, to transfer to or to register in the name of Beneficiary any or all of the Pledged Collateral. In addition, Beneficiary shall have the right at any time to exchange certificates or instruments representing or evidencing the Pledged Collateral for certificates or instruments of smaller or larger denominations.
4. Release of Shares. Upon each payment of the principal amount of the Note, the Beneficiary shall release certificates representing a proportionate number of pledge Shares. By way of example if thirty percent (30%) of the principal amount of the Note is paid to the Beneficiary, the Beneficiary shall release certificates representing thirty percent (30%) of the pledged Shares. Upon the termination of the Note and the payment to Beneficiary of all amounts due to Beneficiary thereunder, Beneficiary shall release all certificates representing the pledged Shares to the Pledgor.
5. Further Assurance: Pledge Amendments.
- (a) Pledgor agrees that from time to time, at the expense of Pledgor, Pledgor will promptly execute and deliver all further instruments and documents, and take all further action that may be necessary or that Beneficiary may reasonably request, in order to perfect and protect any security interest granted or purported to be granted hereby or to enable Beneficiary to exercise and enforce its rights and remedies hereunder with respect to any Pledged Collateral. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, Pledgor shall:
    - (i) execute and file such financing or continuation statements, or amendments thereto, and such other instruments or notices, as may be necessary, or as Beneficiary may reasonably request, in order to perfect and preserve the security interests granted or purported to be granted hereby; and
    - (ii) at Beneficiary’s request, appear in and defend any action or proceeding that may affect Pledgor’s title to or Beneficiary’s security interest in all or any part of the Pledged Collateral.
  - (b) Pledgor further agrees that it shall, upon obtaining any additional shares of stock or other securities of the Beneficiary, deliver to Beneficiary a Pledge Amendment, duly executed by Pledgor, in respect of the additional shares or securities to be pledged pursuant to this Agreement. Pledgor hereby authorizes Beneficiary to attach each Pledge Amendment to this Agreement and agrees that all securities listed on any Pledge Amendment delivered to Beneficiary shall for all purposes hereunder be considered Pledged Collateral; provided that the failure of Pledgor to execute a Pledge Amendment with respect to any additional securities pledged pursuant to this Agreement shall not impair the security interest of Beneficiary therein or otherwise adversely affect the rights and remedies of Beneficiary hereunder with respect thereto.

6. Voting Rights; Dividend; Etc.

- (a) The Pledgor shall have no right to exercise voting or consensual rights with respect to the Pledged Collateral while the Pledge Collateral is subject to this Agreement. During the time that the Pledged Collateral is subject to this Agreement any and all dividends paid or payable (whether payable in cash or other than in cash) and instruments and other property received, receivable or otherwise distributed or in exchange for, any Pledged Collateral; shall forthwith be delivered to Beneficiary to hold as Pledged Collateral; and
- (b) In order to permit Beneficiary to exercise the voting and other consensual rights which he may be entitled to exercise pursuant to Section 6(a) and to receive all dividends and other distributions which he may be entitled to receive under Section 6(a), Pledgor shall promptly execute and deliver (or cause to be executed and delivered) to Beneficiary all such proxies, dividend payment orders and other instruments as Beneficiary may from time to time reasonably request.

7. Secured Party Appointed Attorney-in-Fact Upon the occurrence and during the continuation of an Event of Default, Pledgor hereby irrevocably appoints Beneficiary (and any agent of Beneficiary, with full power of substitution and revocation) as Pledgor's attorney-in-fact, with full authority in the place and stead of Pledgor and in the name of Pledgor, Beneficiary or otherwise, from time to time in Beneficiary's discretion, to take any action and to execute any instrument that Beneficiary may deem necessary or advisable to accomplish the purposes of this Agreement, including without limitation:

- (a) to file one or more financing or continuation statements, or amendments thereto, relative to all or any part of the Pledged Collateral without the signature of Pledgor;
- (b) to ask, demand, collect, sue for, recover, compound, receive and give acquittance and receipts for monies due and to become due under or in respect of any of the Pledged Collateral;
- (c) to receive, endorse and collect any instruments made payable to Pledgor representing any dividend (other than cash dividends), principal or interest payment or other distribution in respect of the Pledged Collateral or any part thereof and to give full discharge for the same.

8. Secured Party May Perform. If Pledgor fails to perform any covenant contained herein, Beneficiary may perform, or cause Beneficiary incurred in connection therewith shall be payable by Pledgor.

9. Remedies.

- (a) If any Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing, Beneficiary may at its option exercise in respect of the Pledged Collateral, in addition to all other rights and remedies provided for herein or otherwise available to it, all the rights and remedies of a secured party on default under the Uniform Commercial Code as in effect in any relevant jurisdiction (the “**Code**”) (whether or not the Code applies to the affected Pledged Collateral), and Beneficiary may at its option declare all of the Obligations to be immediately due and payable in full and Beneficiary may also in its sole discretion, without notice except as specified below, sell or have sold the Pledged Collateral or any part thereof in one or more parcels at public or private sale, at any exchange or broker’s board or elsewhere, for cash, on credit or for future delivery, at such time or times and at such price or prices and upon such other terms as may be commercially reasonable, irrespective of the impact of any such sales on the market price of the Pledged Collateral. Beneficiary may be the purchaser of any or all of the Pledged Collateral at any such sale and Beneficiary shall be entitled, for the purpose of bidding and making settlement or payment of the purchase price for all or any portion of the Pledged Collateral sold at any such public sale, to use and apply any of the Obligations as a credit on account of the purchase price for any Pledged Collateral payable by Beneficiary at such sale. Each purchaser at any such sale shall hold the property sold absolutely free from any claim or right on the part of Pledgor, and Pledgor hereby waives (to the extent permitted by applicable law) all rights of redemption, stay and/or appraisal which it now has or may at any time in the future have under any rule of law or statute now existing or hereafter enacted. Pledgor agrees that to the extent notices of sale shall be required by law, at least five (5) days notice to Pledgor of the time and place of any public sale or the time after which any private sale is to be made shall constitute reasonable notification. Beneficiary shall not be obligated to make any sale of Pledged Collateral regardless of notice of sale having been given. Beneficiary may adjourn any public or private sale from time to time by announcement at the time and place fixed therefor, and such sale may, without further notice, be made at the time and place to which it was so adjourned. If the proceeds of any sale or other disposition of the Pledged Collateral are insufficient to pay all the Obligations, Pledgor shall be liable for the deficiency and the fees of any attorneys employed by Beneficiary to collect such deficiency.
- (b) Pledgor recognizes that, by reason of certain prohibitions contained in the Securities Act of 1933, as from time to time amended (the “**Securities Act**”), and applicable state securities laws, Beneficiary may be compelled, with respect to any sale of all or any part of the Pledged Collateral conducted without prior registration or qualification of such Pledged Collateral under the Securities Act and/or such state securities laws, to limit purchasers to those who will agree, among other things, to acquire the Pledged Collateral for their own account, for investment and not with a view to the distribution or resale thereof. Pledgor acknowledges that any such private sale may be at prices and on terms less favorable than those obtainable through a public sale without such restriction s(including, without limitation, a public offering made pursuant to a registration statement under the Securities Act) and, notwithstanding such circumstances, Pledgor agrees that any such private sale shall be deemed to have been made in a commercially reasonable manner and that Beneficiary shall have no obligation to engage in public sales and no obligation to delay the sale of any Pledged Collateral for the period of time necessary to permit the issuer thereof to register it for a form of public sale requiring registration under the Securities Act or under applicable state securities laws, even if such issuer would, or should, agree to so register it.

- (c) Notwithstanding the foregoing, the parties hereto acknowledge and agree that the remedies provided for herein are not exclusive of any other remedies available to Beneficiary upon the occurrence of an Event of Default. Beneficiary expressly reserves any and all other remedies available to him under the Purchase Agreement.

10. Application of Proceeds. Except as expressly provided elsewhere in this Agreement, all proceeds received by Beneficiary in respect of any sale of, collection from, or other realization upon all or any part of the Pledged Collateral may, in the discretion of Beneficiary, be held by Beneficiary as Pledged Collateral for, and/or then, or at any time thereafter, applied in full or in part by Beneficiary against the Obligations in the following order of priority:

FIRST: To the payment of all costs and expenses of such sale, collection or other realization, and all other expenses, liabilities and advances made or incurred by Beneficiary in connection therewith, and all advances made by Beneficiary hereunder for the account of Pledgor, and to the payment of all costs and expenses paid or incurred by Beneficiary in connection with the exercise of any right or remedy hereunder, all in accordance with Section 11 hereof;

SECOND: To the payment of all other Obligations in such order as Beneficiary shall elect; and

THIRD: To the payment to or upon the order of Pledgor, or to whoever may be lawfully entitled to receive the same or as a court of competent jurisdiction may direct, of any surplus then remaining from such proceeds.

11. Expenses. Pledgor shall pay to Beneficiary upon demand the amount of any and all costs and expenses, including the reasonable fees and expenses of their counsel and of any experts and agents, that Beneficiary may incur in connection with

- (i) the sale of, collection from, or other realization upon, any of the Pledged Collateral;
- (ii) the exercise or enforcement of any of the rights of Beneficiary hereunder; or

(iii) The failure by a Pledgor to perform or observe any of the provisions hereof.

12. Continuing Security Interest. This Agreement shall create a continuing security interest in the Pledged Collateral and shall:

- (a) Remain in full force and effect until the payment in full of all Obligations; and/or;
- (b) be binding upon Pledgor, its respective heirs, administrators or other personal representatives; and
- (c) inure, together with the rights and remedies of Beneficiary hereunder, to the benefit of Beneficiary and its successors, heirs, transferees, personal representatives and assigns.

13. Amendments; Etc. No amendment or waiver of any provision of this Agreement, or consent to any departure by Pledgor herefrom, shall in any event be effective unless the same shall be in writing and signed by Beneficiary, and then such waiver or consent shall be effective only in the specific instance and for the specific purpose for which it was given.

14. Notices. All notices and other communications hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given when sent by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid, or by overnight courier guaranteeing next day delivery and requiring a signature upon delivery, to the parties at the following addresses or such other addresses as either may give notice to the other as herein provided:

- (a) Notices to Beneficiary shall be directed to:

Alzamend Neuro, Inc.  
3802 Spectrum Boulevard, Suite 112C  
Tampa, Florida 33612  
Attention: Stephan Jackman

- (b) Notices to Pledgor shall be directed to:

Ault Life Sciences Fund, LLC  
201 Shipyard Way, Suite E  
Newport Beach, California 92663  
Attention: Milton C. Ault

15. Failure or Indulgence Not Waiver; Remedies Cumulative. No failure or delay on the part of Beneficiary in the exercise of any power, right or privilege hereunder shall impair such power, right or privilege or be construed to be a waiver of any default or acquiescence therein, nor shall any single or partial exercise of any such power, right or privilege preclude any other or further exercise thereof or of any power, right or privilege. All rights and remedies existing under this Agreement are cumulative to, and not exclusive of, any rights or remedies otherwise available.



16. Severability. In case any provision in or obligation under this Agreement shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any jurisdiction, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions or obligations, or of such provision or obligation in any other jurisdiction, shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.
17. Headings. Section and subsection headings in this Agreement are included herein for convenience of reference only and shall not constitute a part of this Agreement for any other purpose or be given any substantive effect.
18. Governing Law.
- (a) This Agreement and the rights and obligations of the signatories hereto shall be governed, construed and controlled by the law of the State of New York (but without giving effect to principles of conflict of laws) and applicable federal law as to interpretation, enforcement, validity, construction, effect and in all other respects.
  - (b) To induce Beneficiary to accept this Agreement:
    - (i) The Pledgor irrevocably agrees that all actions or proceedings in any way, manner or respect, arising be litigated in a state court in the State of New York;
    - (ii) The Pledgor hereby waives any right it may have to transfer or change the venue of any litigation brought against it by Beneficiary in accordance with this section; and
    - (iii) The Pledgor acknowledges that:
      - (A) The provisions of this section constitute a material inducement upon which Beneficiary has relied, is relying and shall rely in entering into or becoming a Beneficiary of this Agreement;
      - (B) it has been represented by counsel of its own choosing; and
      - (C) it has been advised by such counsel as to the meaning and effect of this section.
19. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts and by different parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which when so executed and delivered shall be deemed an original, but all such counterparts together shall constitute but one and the same instrument; signature pages may be detached from multiple separate counterparts and attached to a single counterpart so that all signature pages are physically attached to the same document.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, Pledgor and Beneficiary have caused this Stock Pledge Agreement to be duly executed and delivered thereunto duly authorized as of the date first written above.

**AULT LIFE SCIENCE FUND, LLC**  
("Pledgor")

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Milton C. Ault  
Title: Authorized Person

**ALZAMEND NEURO, INC.**  
("Beneficiary")

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Stephan Jackman  
Title: Chief Executive Officer

**CONSULTING AGREEMENT**

This Consulting Agreement (the “Agreement”) is made as of June 28, 2017 (“Effective Date”) between Spartan Capital Securities, LLC (the “**Consultant**”) and Alzamend Neuro, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”). The Company and the Consultant are collectively herein referred to as the “**Parties**.”

## WITNESSETH

WHEREAS, the Consultant is desirous of providing the Company with consulting services, including but not limited to introducing the Company to sources of financing, on terms and conditions hereinafter set forth;

WHEREAS, the Consultant has been engaged to serve as placement agent with respect to a “\$500,000 minimum/\$4,000,000 maximum” private offering of the Company’s Common Stock (the “**Private Placement**”).

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual promises, covenants and agreements hereinafter set forth, the Parties agree as follows:

1. Term. This Agreement shall be effective as of the date first written above and shall continue in effect for sixty (60) months.

2. Services.

2.1 Services. During the term of this Agreement, the Consultant will stand ready to provide, as the Company shall reasonably request, consulting services related to general corporate matters, including, but not limited to (i) advice and input with respect to raising capital, potential M&A transactions (e.g., candidates and valuations), (ii) identifying suitable personnel for management (including Chief Executive Officer) and Board of Directors and Advisory Board positions, (iii) developing corporate structure and finance strategies, (iv) assisting the Company with strategic introductions, (v) assisting management with enhancing corporate and shareholder value, and (vi) introducing the Company to potential investors (collectively, the “**Advisory Services**”).

3. Compensation.

3.1 Consulting Fee. The Company shall pay to the Consultant a consulting fee for the services to be rendered over the sixty (60) month term of this Agreement which shall not exceed One Million Four Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$1,400,000) in the aggregate. Such fee shall be payable as follows:

(a) An initial service retainer of Two Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$200,000) shall be paid by wire transfer from the escrow account established in connection with the Private Placement at such time as Two Million Five Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$2,500,000) of gross proceeds have been raised in the Private Placement.

(b) To the extent that the gross proceeds of the Private Placement exceed Two Million Seven Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$2,700,000), the Company shall pay, upon the final closing of the Private Placement by wire transfer from the Escrow Account, an amount equal to the amount by which the gross proceeds of the Private Placement exceed Two Million Seven Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$2,700,000), pro-rated to the extent that the total gross proceeds of the Private Placement are less than Four Million Dollars (\$4,000,000), and subject to a maximum payment of One Million Two Hundred Thousand Dollars under this Section 3.1(b). By way of example, if the total gross proceeds of the Private Placement are \$3,200,000, the Company shall pay \$461,538.36 to the Placement Agent from the proceeds of the Private Placement (i.e., since the maximum amount of Private Placement proceeds above \$2,700,000 is \$1,300,000, if \$500,000 of such \$1,300,000 maximum amount is raised in the Private Placement, Consultant will be entitled to an initial payment equal to approximately 38.5% of \$1,200,000 and the Company shall record such initial payment as a prepaid asset).

(c) Provided that no less than Two Million Seven Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$2,700,000) in gross proceeds are raised in the Private Placement, the Consultant shall be entitled to a monthly consulting fee which shall be paid over the sixty (60) month period following the final closing of the Private Placement. The monthly fee shall be equal to the amount determined by (i) dividing the dollar amount of the gross proceeds actually raised in the offering by Four Million Dollars (\$4,000,000), (ii) multiplying that quotient by \$1,400,000, (iii) deducting from such product the aggregate amount of the payments made pursuant to Section 3.1(a) and 3.1(b) above and (iv) dividing the result by sixty (60); provided, however, if the aggregate amount of the prepaid consulting fee exceeds twelve months and cash on hand is less than One Million Dollars (\$1,000,000), then such monthly payment may be delayed, at the Company's option, until cash on hand exceeds One Million Dollars (\$1,000,000), but in no event beyond the term of this Agreement.

3.2 Out-of-pocket expenses. The Consultant shall be reimbursed for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses incurred in connection with the Consultant's performance of Advisory Services. All such expenses must be approved in advance and in writing by the Company prior to the Consultant incurring such expenses.

3.3 Disputes. The Company shall pay each invoice for out-of-pocket expenses within thirty (30) days of receipt of such invoice by the Company, unless the Company disputes the invoice. The Company shall, within thirty (30) days after such invoice is received, notify the Consultant that it disputes the accuracy or appropriateness of the invoice and specify the item in such invoice which the Company considers to be inaccurate or inappropriate.

3.4 Taxes. The Consultant shall be responsible for and pay all federal, state and local taxes that arise in connection with the Services performed hereunder.

4. Confidential Information.

4.1 The term "Confidential Information" means any and all business and technical information, samples, formulas, data and written and verbal descriptions relating to the Company or any of its subsidiaries disclosed to the Consultant.

4.2 The Confidential Information is being disclosed by the Company to the Consultant in order for Consultant to provide the Services hereunder.

4.3 The Consultant shall not use the Confidential Information for any other purpose other than for the purpose of providing the Services pursuant to this Agreement.

4.4 All Confidential Information disclosed by the Company to the Consultant shall remain the property of the Company and shall not be disclosed by Consultant to anyone, without prior written permission of the Company. Such Confidential Information shall be promptly returned to the Company within fifteen (15) days after a written request by the Company, except that Consultant shall have the right to retain one (1) copy of the Company's Confidential Information so that any continuing obligations to the Company may be determined.

4.5 Confidential Information does not include any information which: (a) at the time of disclosure was in the public domain, (b) after disclosure becomes part of the public domain, except through breach of this Agreement by the Consultant, (c) the Consultant can demonstrate by its written records was in the Consultant's possession prior to the time of disclosure by or on behalf of the Company hereunder, and was not acquired directly or indirectly from the Company, (d) becomes available to the Consultant from a third party which, to the knowledge of Consultant, is not legally prohibited from disclosing such Confidential Information, or (e) the Consultant can demonstrate by its written records was developed by or for the Consultant independently of the disclosure of Confidential Information by the Company.

4.6 Consultant's obligations regarding Confidential Information shall survive termination of this Agreement and remain enforceable for a period of five (5) years following termination of this Agreement.

5. Publicity. The Consultant shall not refer to the existence of this Agreement in any press release, advertising or other public statement, written or oral, without the prior written consent of the Company, except as required by applicable law or regulation.

6. Ownership. The Company shall have complete and exclusive ownership of all work products, as well as all materials (and all intellectual property rights in and to all of the foregoing) (collectively, "**Work Product**"), produced by Consultant under this Agreement. In furtherance of the foregoing, the Consultant hereby irrevocably assigns to the Company all right, title and interest in and to such Work Product. The Consultant agrees to execute all documents deemed reasonably necessary by the Company to evidence or perfect the foregoing assignment.

7. Patent Rights. No right or license, either expressed or implied, under any licensing agreement, patent or proprietary right of the Company is granted hereunder. Any information or technology, including but not limited to data, products, processes, formulations, machinery and apparatus, and uses thereof, which Consultant may develop, improve, discover or invent as a result of the Services (the “**Technology**”) shall be considered to be “Work Product” and shall become the property of the Company. The Consultant shall immediately disclose any Technology to the Company. The Consultant shall also execute any other documents reasonably requested by the Company related to the Technology and the Work Product, including documents necessary for patent or regulatory filings and cooperate with the Company after the filing of patent or regulatory documents for as long as necessary to vest the rights to the Technology in the Company, including execution of necessary documents in subsequent continuation, continuation-in-part, divisional, international, and foreign patent applications.

8. Return of Materials. Upon the expiration or termination of this Agreement, whichever occurs first, the Consultant shall transfer to the Company all Work Product, Technology, work in progress, property, Confidential Information and all other materials in the Consultant’s possession or control that are the property of the Company.

9. Indemnity.

9.1 By the Company. The Company shall defend, indemnify and hold the Consultant harmless in accordance with the indemnification and other provisions set forth in Exhibit A hereto, which provisions are incorporated herein by reference and shall survive the termination or expiration of this Agreement.

9.2 By Consultant. The Consultant shall defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Company from and against any and all Liabilities arising out of or from the Consultant’s gross negligence or willful misconduct in connection with the performance of this Agreement. The Consultant’s obligations under this Section 9.2 shall survive the termination or expiration of this Agreement.

10. Registration Rights.

10.1 The Company agrees, subject to applicable law or regulations including but not limited to Rule 415 of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), to use its commercially reasonable efforts to, within one hundred and eighty (180) days (the “**Filing Deadline**”) of the final (in the case of an underwriter’s exercise of an over-allotment option) closing of an initial public offering of the Company’s equity securities registered under the Securities Act, file a Registration Statement on Form S-1 (the “**Registration Statement**”) with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**SEC**”), which Registration Statement shall cover (i) the shares of common stock issuable to the Consultant pursuant to this Agreement, (ii) and the shares of Common Stock issued in the Private Placement (collectively, the “**Registrable Shares**”). The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to have the Registration Statement declared effective within 120 days from the Filing Deadline. The Company shall not (i) file any other registration statements (except for Form S-8 registration statements) until the Registration Statement is declared effective by the SEC, or (ii) include in the Registration Statement any securities other than the Registrable Shares.

10.2 Registration Procedures. In furtherance of its obligations under this Section 10 the Company shall, as expeditiously as reasonably possible:

(a) Use its commercially reasonable efforts to (i) cause the Registration Statement to become effective, and (ii) cause the Registration Statement to remain effective until the earliest to occur of (A) such date as the Consultant and the other selling shareholders (collectively with the Consultant, the “**Selling Shareholders**”) has completed the distribution described in the Registration Statement and (B) such time that all of such Registrable Shares are no longer, by reason of Rule 144 under the Securities Act, required to be registered for the sale thereof by the Selling Shareholders. The Company will also use its commercially reasonable efforts to, during the period that the Registration Statement is required to be maintained hereunder, file such post-effective amendments and supplements thereto as may be required by the Securities Act and the rules and regulations thereunder or otherwise to ensure that the Registration Statement does not contain any untrue statement of material fact or omit to state a fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements contained therein, in light of the circumstances under which they are made, not misleading; provided, however, that if applicable rules under the Securities Act governing the obligation to file a post-effective amendment permit, in lieu of filing a post-effective amendment that (i) includes any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act or (ii) reflects facts or events representing a material or fundamental change in the information set forth in the Registration Statement, the Company may incorporate by reference information required to be included in (i) and (ii) above to the extent such information is contained in periodic reports filed pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “**Exchange Act**”) in the Registration Statement.

(b) Prepare and file with the SEC such amendments and supplements to the Registration Statement, and the prospectus used in connection with the Registration Statement, as may be necessary to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act with respect to the disposition of all securities covered by the Registration Statement.

(c) Furnish to each Selling Shareholder, once the Registration Statement has been declared effective, such numbers of copies of a prospectus and such other documents as it may reasonably request in order to facilitate the disposition of Registrable Shares owned by the Selling Shareholder.

(d) Use commercially reasonable efforts to register and qualify the securities covered by the Registration Statement under such other federal or state securities laws of such jurisdictions as shall be reasonably requested by the Consultant; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required in connection therewith or as a condition thereto to qualify to do business or to file a general consent to service of process in any such states or jurisdictions, unless the Company is already subject to service in such jurisdiction and except as may be required by the Securities Act.

(e) If applicable, cause all such Registrable Shares registered on the Registration Statement to be listed on the national securities exchange on which shares of Common Stock are then listed.

(f) Cooperate with the Selling Shareholders to facilitate the timely preparation and delivery of certificates representing the Registrable Shares to be sold, which certificates will not bear any restrictive legends.

10.3 Furnish Information. It shall be a condition precedent to the obligation of the Company to take any action pursuant to this Section 10 with respect to the Registrable Shares that the Consultant shall furnish to the Company such information regarding the Selling Shareholders, the Registrable Shares held by the Selling Shareholders, and the intended method of disposition of such securities as shall be reasonably required by the Company to affect the registration of the Registrable Shares.

10.4 Registration Expenses. The Company shall bear and pay all registration expenses incurred in connection with any registration, filing or qualification of the Registrable Shares with respect to registration pursuant to this Section 10 for the Selling Shareholders, but excluding legal or other expenses of the Selling Shareholders.

10.5 Indemnification. In the event that any Registrable Shares are included in a Registration Statement under this Section 10:

(a) To the extent permitted by law, the Company will indemnify and hold harmless the Selling Shareholders for Consultant and each person, if any, who controls, within the meaning of the Securities Act, a Selling Shareholder against any losses, claims, damages, or liabilities (joint or several) to which they may become subject under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act, insofar as such losses, claims, damages, or liabilities (or actions in respect thereof) arise out of or are based upon any of the following statements, omissions or violations (collectively a “Violation”): (i) any untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement, including any preliminary prospectus or final prospectus contained therein or any amendments or supplements thereto, (ii) the omission to state therein a material fact required to be stated therein, or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, or (iii) any violation by the Company of the Securities Act, the Exchange Act, or any rule or regulation promulgated under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act, and the Company will pay to the Selling Shareholders, as incurred, any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by them in connection with investigating or defending any such loss, claim, damage, liability, or action; provided, however, that the indemnity agreement contained in this Section 10.5(a) shall not apply to amounts paid in settlement of any such loss, claim, damage, liability, or action if such settlement is effected without the consent of the Company (which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld), nor shall the Company be liable in any such case for any such loss, claim, damage, liability, or action to the extent that it arises out of or is based upon a Violation which occurs in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished expressly for use in connection with such registration by a Selling Shareholder or any underwriter or controlling person.

(b) Each Selling Shareholder will indemnify and hold harmless the Company, each of its directors, each of its officers, each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of the Securities Act, any underwriter, any other Selling Shareholder selling securities in the Registration Statement and any controlling person of any such underwriter or other Selling Shareholder, against any losses, claims, damages, or liabilities (joint or several) to which any of the foregoing persons may become subject, under the Securities Act, or the Exchange Act, insofar as such losses, claims, damages, or liabilities (or actions in respect thereof) arise out of or are based upon any Violation, in each case to the extent (and only to the extent) that such Violation occurs in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished by such Selling Shareholder expressly for use in connection with such registration; and each such Selling Shareholder will pay, as incurred, any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by any person intended to be indemnified pursuant to this Section 10.5(b), in connection with investigating or defending any such loss, claim, damage, liability, or action; provided, however, that the indemnity agreement contained in this Section 10.5(b) shall not apply to amounts paid in settlement of any such loss, claim, damage, liability or action if such settlement is effected without the consent of the Selling Shareholder, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld; provided, further, that, in no event shall any indemnity under this Section 10.5(b) exceed the dollar amount of the proceeds received by such Selling Shareholder upon the sale of the Registrable Shares included in the Registration Statement giving rise to such indemnification obligation.



(c) Promptly after receipt by an indemnified party under this Section 10.5 of notice of the commencement of any action (including any governmental action), such indemnified party shall, if a claim in respect thereof is to be made against any indemnifying party under this Section 10.5, deliver to the indemnifying party a written notice of the commencement thereof and the indemnifying party shall have the right to participate in, and, to the extent the indemnifying party so desires, jointly with any other indemnifying party similarly notified, to assume the defense thereof with counsel selected by the indemnifying party and approved by the indemnified party (whose approval shall not be unreasonably withheld); provided, however, that an indemnified party (together with all other indemnified parties which may be represented without conflict by one counsel) shall have the right to retain one separate counsel, with the fees and expenses to be paid by the indemnifying party, if representation of such indemnified party by the counsel retained by the indemnifying party would be inappropriate due to actual or potential differing interests between such indemnified party and any other party represented by such counsel in such proceeding. The failure to deliver written notice to the indemnifying party within a reasonable time of the commencement of any such action, if prejudicial to its ability to defend such action, shall relieve such indemnifying party of any liability to the indemnified party under this Section 10.5, but the omission so to deliver written notice to the indemnifying party will not relieve it of any liability that it may have to any indemnified party otherwise than under this Section 10.5.

(d) If the indemnification provided for in this Section 10.5 is held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be unavailable to an indemnified party with respect to any loss, liability, claim, damage, or expense referred to therein, then the indemnifying party, in lieu of indemnifying such indemnified party hereunder, shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by such indemnified party as a result of such loss, liability, claim, damage, or expense in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative fault of the indemnifying party on the one hand and of the indemnified party on the other in connection with the statements or omissions that resulted in such loss, liability, claim, damage, or expense as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative fault of the indemnifying party and of the indemnified party shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or the alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the indemnifying party or by the indemnified party and the parties' relative intent, knowledge, access to information, and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission.

(e) The obligations of the Company and Consultant under this Section 10.5 shall survive the completion of the Offering.

10.6 Permitted Transferees. The rights to cause the Company to register Shares granted to the Consultant by the Company under this Section 10 may be assigned in full or in part by Consultant in connection with a transfer of the Shares upon the written approval of the Company, which shall not unreasonably be withheld.

10.7 Survival. The rights and obligations set forth in this Section 10 shall survive the expiration or termination of this Agreement.

11. Independent Contractor. The Consultant shall perform all of Consultant's obligations under this Agreement as an independent contractor and not as an agent, employee or representative of the Company. The Consultant shall not participate in any insurance programs or benefits including, but not limited to, workers' compensation insurance, disability insurance or any other employee benefits available to the Company's employees.

12. Assignment. The Consultant shall not assign this Agreement or the performance of Consultant's obligations hereunder, without the express prior written consent of the Company.

13. Notices. Any notice consent, authorization of other communication to be given hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed duly given and received when delivered personally, when transmitted by fax, three days after being mailed by first class mail, or one day after being sent by a nationally recognized overnight delivery service, charges and postage prepaid, properly addressed to the party to receive such notice, as the following address or fax number (or such other address or fax number as shall hereafter be specified by such party by like notice):

a. *If to the Company, to:*

Alzamend Neuro, Inc.  
50 W. Broadway, Suite 300  
Salt Lake City, Utah 84101  
Attn: Philip E. Mansour  
Telephone: (949) 346-5822

b. *If to the Consultant:*

Spartan Capital Securities, LLC  
45 Broadway  
New York, New York 10006.  
Attn: John Lowry  
Telephone: (212) 293-0123

14. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts each of which shall for all purposes be deemed to be an original and all of which shall constitute one and the same instrument. Facsimile signatures shall be treated as original signatures.

15. Severability. If for any reason a court of competent jurisdiction finds any provision of this Agreement, or portion thereof, to be unenforceable, the remainder of this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.

16. Relationship of Parties. Nothing in this Agreement is intended or shall be deemed to constitute a partnership, agency, employer-employee or joint venture relationship between the Parties. No Party shall incur any debts or make any commitments for the other, except to the extent, if at all, specifically provided herein.

17. Waiver. A waiver by either party of any of the terms and conditions of this Agreement in any instance shall not be deemed or construed to be a waiver of such term or condition for the future, or of any subsequent breach hereof. All rights, remedies, undertakings, obligations and agreements contained in this Agreement shall be cumulative and none of them shall be in limitation of any other remedy, right, undertaking, obligation or agreement of either party.

18. Entire Agreement. This Agreement sets forth the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the specific matters contained herein, and this Agreement has no bearing or effect on any prior agreements entered into by the Parties. This Agreement may be modified or amended only in writing signed by the Parties. The descriptive headings of each numbered section of this Agreement are for convenience only and are not for use in the construction and/or interpretation of this Agreement.

19. Applicable Law. This Agreement shall be deemed to have been made in the State of New York and shall be construed and governed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York without regard to the conflicts of laws rules of such jurisdiction. The parties hereby irrevocably consent to the jurisdiction of the courts located in the State of New York.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Parties have caused their respective signature page to this Agreement to be duly executed as of the date first written above.

**Spartan Capital Securities, LLC**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: John Lowry  
Title: Chief Executive Officer

**Alzamend Neuro, Inc.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Philip E. Mansour  
Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

## EXHIBIT A

### INDEMNIFICATION PROVISIONS

Alzamend Neuro, Inc. (the “Company”) agrees to indemnify and hold harmless Spartan Capital Securities, LLC (“Consultant”) and each of the other Indemnified Parties (as hereinafter defined) from and against any and all losses, claims, damages, obligations, penalties, judgments, awards, liabilities, and reasonable costs, expenses and disbursements, and any and all actions, suits, proceedings and investigations in respect thereof and reasonable legal and other costs, expenses and disbursements in giving testimony or furnishing documents in response to a subpoena or otherwise (including, without limitation, the reasonable costs, expenses and disbursements, as and when incurred, of investigating, preparing, pursuing or defending any such action, suit, proceeding or investigation (whether or not in connection with litigation in which any Indemnified Party is a party)) (collectively, “Losses”), directly or indirectly, caused by, relating to, based upon, arising out of, or in connection with, Consultant’s acting for the Company, including, without limitation, any act or omission by Consultant in connection with its acceptance of or the performance or non-performance of its obligations under the Consulting Agreement between the Company and Consultant to which these indemnification provisions are attached and form a part (the “Agreement”), any breach by the Company of any representation, warranty, covenant or agreement contained in the Agreement (or in any instrument, document or agreement relating thereto), or the enforcement by Consultant of its rights under the Agreement or these indemnification provisions, except to the extent that any such Losses are found in a final judgment by a court of competent jurisdiction (not subject to further appeal) to have resulted primarily and directly from the gross negligence or willful misconduct of an Indemnified Party. The Company also agrees that no Indemnified Party shall have any liability (whether direct or indirect, in contract or tort or otherwise) to the Company for or in connection with the engagement of Consultant by the Company or for any other reason, except to the extent that any such liability is found in a final judgment by a court of competent jurisdiction (not subject to further appeal) to have resulted primarily and directly from such Indemnified Party’s gross negligence or willful misconduct.

These indemnification provisions shall extend to the following persons (collectively, the “Indemnified Parties”): Consultant, its present and former affiliated entities, partners, employees, legal counsel, agents and controlling persons (within the meaning of the federal securities laws), and the officers, directors, partners, stockholders, members, managers, employees, legal counsel, agents and controlling persons of any of them. These indemnification provisions shall be in addition to any liability which the Company may otherwise have to any Indemnified Party.

If any action, suit, proceeding or investigation is commenced, as to which an Indemnified Party proposes to demand indemnification, it shall notify the Company with reasonable promptness; provided, however, that any failure by an Indemnified Party to notify the Company shall not relieve the Company from its obligations hereunder unless the Company is prejudiced by such failure. An Indemnified Party shall have the right to retain counsel of its own choice to represent it, and the reasonable fees, expenses and disbursements of such counsel shall be borne by the Company. Any such counsel shall, to the extent consistent with its professional responsibilities, cooperate with the Company and any counsel designated by the Company. The Company shall be liable for any settlement of any claim against any Indemnified Party made with the Company’s written consent. The Company shall not, without the prior written consent of Consultant, settle or compromise any claim, or permit a default or consent to the entry of any judgment in respect thereof, unless such settlement, compromise or consent (i) includes, as an unconditional term thereof, the giving by the claimant to all of the Indemnified Parties against whom it has made a claim of an unconditional release from all liability in respect of such claim, and (ii) does not contain any untrue factual or legal admission by or with respect to an Indemnified Party or an untrue adverse statement with respect to the character, professionalism, expertise or reputation of any Indemnified Party or any action or inaction of any Indemnified Party.

In order to provide for just and equitable contribution, if a claim for indemnification pursuant to these indemnification provisions is made but it is found in a final judgment by a court of competent jurisdiction (not subject to further appeal) that such indemnification may not be enforced in such case, even though the express provisions hereof provide for indemnification in such case, then the Company shall contribute to the Losses to which any Indemnified Party may be subject (i) in accordance with the relative benefits received by the Company, on the one hand, and the Indemnified Party, on the other hand, and (ii) if (and only if) the allocation provided in clause (i) of this sentence is not permitted by applicable law, in such proportion as to reflect not only the relative benefits, but also the relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and the Indemnified Party, on the other hand, in connection with the statements, acts or omissions which resulted in such Losses as well as any relevant equitable considerations. No person found liable for a fraudulent misrepresentation shall be entitled to indemnification or contribution from any person who is not also found liable for fraudulent misrepresentation. The relative benefits received (or anticipated to be received) by the Company and its stockholders, subsidiaries and affiliates shall be deemed to be equal to the aggregate consideration payable or receivable by such parties in connection with the transaction or transactions to which the Agreement relates relative to the amount of fees actually received by Consultant in connection with such transaction or transactions. Notwithstanding the foregoing, in no event shall the amount contributed by all Indemnified Parties exceed the amount of fees previously received by Consultant pursuant to the Agreement.

Neither termination nor completion of the engagement of Consultant referred to above shall affect these indemnification provisions which shall remain operative and in full force and effect. The indemnification provisions shall be binding upon the Company and its successors and assigns and shall inure to the benefit of the Indemnified Parties and their respective successors, assigns, heirs and personal representatives.

**Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

We consent to the use in this Amendment No. 2 to the Offering Statement on Form 1-A of Alzamend Neuro, Inc. of our report dated August 28, 2019, relating to the financial statements of Alzamend Neuro, Inc. as of April 30, 2019 and 2018 and for each of the years in the two-year period ended April 30, 2019 appearing in the Offering Circular, which is part of this Offering Statement. We also consent to the reference to our firm under the heading "Experts" in such Offering Statement.

/s/ Squar Milner LLP

San Diego, CA  
March 12, 2020

---